# Contents

1	CO	MMIS	SION'S RULES
	1.1	Amate	eur Radio Fundamentals
		1.1.1	Basis and Purpose of the Amateur Radio Service
		1.1.2	Regulation of the Amateur Radio Service
		1.1.3	Use of Phonetic Alphabet in Station Identification
		1.1.4	Number of Operator/Primary Station Licenses
		1.1.5	FCC License Grant Verification
		1.1.6	Definition of a Beacon
		1.1.7	FCC Part 97 Definition of a Space Station
		1.1.8	Entities for Transmit/Receive Channels Recommendation
		1.1.9	Frequency Coordinator Selection
		1.1.10	RACES Overview
		1.1.11	Willful Interference in Amateur Radio
	1.2	Radio	Practice Essentials
		1.2.1	Frequency Ranges for Technician Licensees
		1.2.2	Contacting the International Space Station (ISS) on VHF Bands . 1
		1.2.3	6 Meter Amateur Band Frequency
		1.2.4	Amateur Band for 146.52 MHz
		1.2.5	Usage of 219 to 220 MHz Segment in 1.25 Meter Band
		1.2.6	Technician Class HF Phone Privileges
		1.2.7	CW-Only VHF/UHF Band Segments
		1.2.8	US Amateurs in Secondary Band Segments
		1.2.9	Transmit Frequency Placement
		1.2.10	SSB Phone Usage in Amateur Bands Above 50 MHz
		1.2.11	Maximum Peak Envelope Power for Technician Class Operators . 1
		1.2.12	Maximum Peak Envelope Power for Technician Class Operators . 1
	1.3	Key L	icensing Protocols
		1.3.1	Available FCC License Classes
		1.3.2	Vanity Call Sign Eligibility
		1.3.3	Permitted International Communications for FCC-Licensed Ama-
			teur Radio Stations
		1.3.4	Consequences of Unreachable Email for FCC
		1.3.5	Valid Technician Class Call Sign Format
		1.3.6	Transmission Locations for FCC-Licensed Amateur Stations 1
		1.3.7	License Revocation or Suspension
		1.3.8	FCC-Issued Amateur Radio License Term
		1.3.9	Grace Period for Amateur License Renewal
		1.3.10	Transmission Timing After License Examination

	1.3.11	Transmitting with an Expired License	20
1.4		of Engagement	21
	1.4.1	Prohibited Countries for FCC-Licensed Amateur Radio Communi-	
		cations	21
	1.4.2	Prohibition of One-Way Transmissions	21
	1.4.3	Transmitting Encoded Messages	22
	1.4.4	Authorized Transmission of Music in Amateur Stations	22
	1.4.5	Use of Amateur Radio Stations for Equipment Sales	23
	1.4.6	Restrictions on Indecent or Obscene Language	23
	1.4.7	Types of Amateur Stations for Automatic Retransmission	24
	1.4.8	Compensation for Amateur Station Operation	24
	1.4.9	Amateur Station Transmissions in Emergencies	25
	1.4.10	Definition of Broadcasting in Amateur Radio Service	25
	1.4.11	Transmission Without Identification	25
1.5	Opera	ting Rules for Amateur Radio	26
	1.5.1	Transmission Without a Control Operator	26
	1.5.2	Control Operator of an Amateur Satellite Station	27
	1.5.3	Designation of Station Control Operator	27
	1.5.4	Transmitting Frequency Privileges of an Amateur Station	28
	1.5.5	Amateur Station's Control Point	29
	1.5.6	Technician Class Licensee and Amateur Extra Class Band	30
	1.5.7	Responsibility for Station Operation	30
	1.5.8	Example of Automatic Control	31
	1.5.9	Requirements for Remote Control Operation	32
	1.5.10	Remote Control in Part 97	32
	1.5.11	Control Operator of an Amateur Station	33
1.6	Topics	on FCC Regulations and Amateur License	34
	1.6.1	Station and Records Availability for FCC Inspection	34
	1.6.2	Identification with FCC-Assigned Call Sign	34
	1.6.3	Transmission of Assigned Call Sign	35
	1.6.4		35
	1.6.5	Call Sign Identification for Phone Signals	35
	1.6.6	Acceptable Self-Assigned Indicators in Phone Transmission	36
	1.6.7	Restrictions for Non-Licensed Operators Speaking to Foreign Stations	36
	1.6.8	Definition of Third Party Communications	37
	1.6.9	Types of Amateur Stations	37
	1.6.10	Accountability for Repeater Violations	38
		Requirements for Club Station License Grant	38
	1.0.11	Trequirements for Gras Station Electrice Grain 1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1	00
OP		ING PROCEDURES	39
2.1		ter and Communication Basics	39
	2.1.1	Common Repeater Frequency Offset in the 2 Meter Band	39
	2.1.2	National Calling Frequency for FM Simplex Operations	39
	2.1.3	Common Repeater Frequency Offset in the 70 cm Band	40
	2.1.4	Calling Another Station on a Repeater	40
	2.1.5	Responding to a Station Calling CQ	40
	2.1.6	On-the-Air Test Transmissions	41
	2.1.7	Repeater Offset	41

		2.1.8	Meaning of the Procedural Signal "CQ"	42
		2.1.9	Identifying a Station Listening on a Repeater	42
		2.1.10	Band Plan Beyond FCC Privileges	42
		2.1.11	Amateur Station Transmission and Reception on Same Frequency	43
			Pre-Calling CQ Protocol	44
	2.2		Operating Essentials	44
		2.2.1	Using a VHF/UHF Transceiver's Reverse Function	44
		2.2.2	Sub-audible Tone for Squelch Control	44
		2.2.3	Linked Repeater Network Description	45
		2.2.4	Accessing a Repeater	45
		2.2.5	Distortion in FM Transmission Audio	46
		2.2.6	Signaling with Audio Tone Pairs	46
		2.2.7	Joining a Digital Repeater's Talkgroup	47
		2.2.8	Interference on the Same Frequency	47
		2.2.9	Simplex Channels in VHF/UHF Band Plans	48
		2.2.10	Q Signal for Interference	48
			Q Signal for Changing Frequency	49
			Color Code in DMR Repeater Systems	49
			Purpose of a Squelch Function	49
	2.3		tional Basics	50
	2.0	2.3.1	FCC Rules and Amateur Station Operation	50
		2.3.2	Typical Duties of a Net Control Station	50
		2.3.3	Ensuring Correct Reception of Unusual Words	51
		2.3.4	RACES Overview	51
		2.3.5	Understanding Traffic in Net Operation	51
		2.3.6	Amateur Radio Emergency Service (ARES)	52
		2.3.7	Standard Practices in a Net	52
		2.3.8	Characteristics of Good Traffic Handling	52
		2.3.9	Frequency Privileges and Emergency Operations	53
			Preamble of a Formal Traffic Message	53
			Understanding the Check in a Radiogram Header	54
		2.0.11	onderstanding the cheek in a readiogram freader	0 1
3	$\mathbf{R}\mathbf{A}$	DIO W	VAVE PROPAGATION	55
	3.1	Signal	Variability and Challenges	55
		3.1.1	VHF Signal Strength Variations	55
		3.1.2	Effect of Vegetation on UHF and Microwave Signals	56
		3.1.3	Antenna Polarization for VHF/UHF Long-Distance Contacts	56
		3.1.4	Polarization Mismatch in VHF/UHF Links	57
		3.1.5	Communicating with a Distant Repeater Using a Directional Antenna	58
		3.1.6	Picket Fencing in Radio Communications	58
		3.1.7	Weather Impact on Microwave Range	59
		3.1.8	Ionospheric Signal Fading	59
		3.1.9	Effects of Elliptical Polarization in Ionospheric Signals	60
		3.1.10	Effects of Multi-Path Propagation on Data Transmissions	60
		3.1.11		61
		3.1.12	Effect of Fog and Rain on 10m and 6m Bands	61
	3.2		omagnetic Essentials	62

		3.2.1	Relationship Between Electric and Magnetic Fields in an Electro-	
			magnetic Wave	62
		3.2.2	Polarization of Radio Waves	63
		3.2.3	Components of a Radio Wave	63
		3.2.4	Velocity of a Radio Wave in Free Space	64
		3.2.5	Wavelength and Frequency Relationship	65
		3.2.6	Converting Frequency to Wavelength	65
		3.2.7	Identifying Amateur Radio Bands	66
		3.2.8	VHF Frequency Range	66
		3.2.9	UHF Frequency Range	66
		3.2.10		67
		3.2.11	Velocity of a Radio Wave in Free Space	67
	3.3		gation Basics	68
		3.3.1	Simplex UHF Signals and Radio Horizon	68
		3.3.2	HF Communication Characteristics	68
		3.3.3	Characteristics of VHF Signals via Auroral Backscatter	69
		3.3.4	Propagation Types Beyond the Radio Horizon	70
		3.3.5	Radio Signal Propagation Beyond Obstructions	70
		3.3.6	Tropospheric Ducting in VHF and UHF Communications	71
		3.3.7	Meteor Scatter Communication Band	72
		3.3.8	Tropospheric Ducting Causes	72
		3.3.9	Optimal Time for 10 Meter Band Propagation via F Region	73
			Ionospheric Communication Bands	73
			Radio Horizon for VHF and UHF Signals	74
			C	
4	$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{M}$		R RADIO PRACTICES	<b>7</b> 5
4	<b>AM</b> 4.1		al Connections and Equipment	<b>75</b> 75
4			Al Connections and Equipment	
4		Critica	al Connections and Equipment	75
4		Critica 4.1.1	Al Connections and Equipment	75 75
4		Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver	75 75 75
4		Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver	75 75 75 76
4		Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver	75 75 75 76 76
4		Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver	75 75 75 76 76
4		Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5 4.1.6	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver	75 75 75 76 76 77
4		Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5 4.1.6 4.1.7	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver	75 75 75 76 76 77 77
4		Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5 4.1.6 4.1.7 4.1.8	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver Considerations for Selecting an SWR Meter DC Power Connection Wires for Transceivers FT8 Transceiver Audio Connections Installation of an RF Power Meter Computer-Radio Interface Signals for Digital Mode Operation Computer and Transceiver Connection for Digital Modes Preferred Conductor for RF Bonding Battery Power Duration Calculation	75 75 76 76 77 77 78 78
4		Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5 4.1.6 4.1.7 4.1.8 4.1.9	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver Considerations for Selecting an SWR Meter DC Power Connection Wires for Transceivers FT8 Transceiver Audio Connections Installation of an RF Power Meter Computer-Radio Interface Signals for Digital Mode Operation Computer and Transceiver Connection for Digital Modes Preferred Conductor for RF Bonding Battery Power Duration Calculation	75 75 76 76 77 77 78 78 79
4		Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5 4.1.6 4.1.7 4.1.8 4.1.9 4.1.10 4.1.11	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver Considerations for Selecting an SWR Meter DC Power Connection Wires for Transceivers FT8 Transceiver Audio Connections Installation of an RF Power Meter Computer-Radio Interface Signals for Digital Mode Operation Computer and Transceiver Connection for Digital Modes Preferred Conductor for RF Bonding Battery Power Duration Calculation Function of a Transceiver and Digital Mode Hot Spot	75 75 76 76 76 77 77 78 78 79
4		Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5 4.1.6 4.1.7 4.1.8 4.1.9 4.1.10 4.1.11 4.1.12	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver Considerations for Selecting an SWR Meter DC Power Connection Wires for Transceivers FT8 Transceiver Audio Connections Installation of an RF Power Meter Computer-Radio Interface Signals for Digital Mode Operation Computer and Transceiver Connection for Digital Modes Preferred Conductor for RF Bonding Battery Power Duration Calculation Function of a Transceiver and Digital Mode Hot Spot Negative Power Return Connection in a Vehicle	75 75 76 76 77 77 78 78 79 79
4	4.1	Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5 4.1.6 4.1.7 4.1.8 4.1.9 4.1.10 4.1.11 4.1.12	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver Considerations for Selecting an SWR Meter DC Power Connection Wires for Transceivers FT8 Transceiver Audio Connections Installation of an RF Power Meter Computer-Radio Interface Signals for Digital Mode Operation Computer and Transceiver Connection for Digital Modes Preferred Conductor for RF Bonding Battery Power Duration Calculation Function of a Transceiver and Digital Mode Hot Spot Negative Power Return Connection in a Vehicle Electronic Keyer	75 75 76 76 76 77 77 78 78 79 79 80 80
4	4.1	Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5 4.1.6 4.1.7 4.1.8 4.1.9 4.1.10 4.1.11 4.1.12 Sound	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver Considerations for Selecting an SWR Meter DC Power Connection Wires for Transceivers FT8 Transceiver Audio Connections Installation of an RF Power Meter Computer-Radio Interface Signals for Digital Mode Operation Computer and Transceiver Connection for Digital Modes Preferred Conductor for RF Bonding Battery Power Duration Calculation Function of a Transceiver and Digital Mode Hot Spot Negative Power Return Connection in a Vehicle Electronic Keyer Waves Simplified Effect of Excessive Microphone Gain on SSB Transmissions	75 75 75 76 76 76 77 78 78 79 80 80 81
4	4.1	Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5 4.1.6 4.1.7 4.1.8 4.1.9 4.1.10 4.1.11 4.1.12 Sound 4.2.1	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver Considerations for Selecting an SWR Meter DC Power Connection Wires for Transceivers FT8 Transceiver Audio Connections Installation of an RF Power Meter Computer-Radio Interface Signals for Digital Mode Operation Computer and Transceiver Connection for Digital Modes Preferred Conductor for RF Bonding Battery Power Duration Calculation Function of a Transceiver and Digital Mode Hot Spot Negative Power Return Connection in a Vehicle Electronic Keyer Waves Simplified	75 75 76 76 76 77 77 78 78 79 80 80 81 81
4	4.1	Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5 4.1.6 4.1.7 4.1.8 4.1.9 4.1.10 4.1.11 4.1.12 Sound 4.2.1 4.2.2	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver Considerations for Selecting an SWR Meter DC Power Connection Wires for Transceivers FT8 Transceiver Audio Connections Installation of an RF Power Meter Computer-Radio Interface Signals for Digital Mode Operation Computer and Transceiver Connection for Digital Modes Preferred Conductor for RF Bonding Battery Power Duration Calculation Function of a Transceiver and Digital Mode Hot Spot Negative Power Return Connection in a Vehicle Electronic Keyer Waves Simplified Effect of Excessive Microphone Gain on SSB Transmissions Entering a Transceiver's Operating Frequency	75 75 76 76 76 77 77 78 79 80 80 81 81
4	4.1	Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5 4.1.6 4.1.7 4.1.8 4.1.9 4.1.10 4.1.11 4.1.12 Sound 4.2.1 4.2.2 4.2.3	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver Considerations for Selecting an SWR Meter DC Power Connection Wires for Transceivers FT8 Transceiver Audio Connections Installation of an RF Power Meter Computer-Radio Interface Signals for Digital Mode Operation Computer and Transceiver Connection for Digital Modes Preferred Conductor for RF Bonding Battery Power Duration Calculation Function of a Transceiver and Digital Mode Hot Spot Negative Power Return Connection in a Vehicle Electronic Keyer Waves Simplified Effect of Excessive Microphone Gain on SSB Transmissions Entering a Transceiver's Operating Frequency Adjusting Squelch for Weak FM Signals	75 75 76 76 77 77 78 78 79 80 80 81 81 81 82
4	4.1	Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5 4.1.6 4.1.7 4.1.8 4.1.9 4.1.10 4.1.11 4.1.12 Sound 4.2.1 4.2.2 4.2.3 4.2.4	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver Considerations for Selecting an SWR Meter DC Power Connection Wires for Transceivers FT8 Transceiver Audio Connections Installation of an RF Power Meter Computer-Radio Interface Signals for Digital Mode Operation Computer and Transceiver Connection for Digital Modes Preferred Conductor for RF Bonding Battery Power Duration Calculation Function of a Transceiver and Digital Mode Hot Spot Negative Power Return Connection in a Vehicle Electronic Keyer Waves Simplified Effect of Excessive Microphone Gain on SSB Transmissions Entering a Transceiver's Operating Frequency Adjusting Squelch for Weak FM Signals Quick Access to Favorite Frequency on Transceiver Scanning Function of an FM Transceiver	75 75 76 76 76 77 77 78 79 80 80 81 81 82 82
4	4.1	Critica 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5 4.1.6 4.1.7 4.1.8 4.1.9 4.1.10 4.1.11 4.1.12 Sound 4.2.1 4.2.2 4.2.3 4.2.4 4.2.5	Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver Considerations for Selecting an SWR Meter DC Power Connection Wires for Transceivers FT8 Transceiver Audio Connections Installation of an RF Power Meter Computer-Radio Interface Signals for Digital Mode Operation Computer and Transceiver Connection for Digital Modes Preferred Conductor for RF Bonding Battery Power Duration Calculation Function of a Transceiver and Digital Mode Hot Spot Negative Power Return Connection in a Vehicle Electronic Keyer Waves Simplified Effect of Excessive Microphone Gain on SSB Transmissions Entering a Transceiver's Operating Frequency Adjusting Squelch for Weak FM Signals Quick Access to Favorite Frequency on Transceiver	75 75 76 76 76 77 78 78 79 80 81 81 81 82 82

		4.2.9	Selecting a Group of Stations on a Digital Voice Transceiver	84
		4.2.10	Optimal Receiver Filter Bandwidth for SSB Reception	85
		4.2.11	Programming Requirements for D-STAR Transceivers	85
		4.2.12	Tuning an FM Receiver Above or Below a Signal's Frequency	86
5	ELE	ECTRI	CAL PRINCIPLES	87
	5.1	Electri	cal Essentials	87
		5.1.1		87
		5.1.2		87
		5.1.3	Flow of Electrons in an Electric Circuit	88
		5.1.4	Units of Electrical Resistance	88
		5.1.5		88
		5.1.6		89
		5.1.7		89
		5.1.8	· ·	89
		5.1.9		90
		5.1.10		90
		5.1.11		90
		5.1.12		91
	5.2			91
		5.2.1		91
		5.2.2		92
		5.2.3	Kilovolt Definition	92
		5.2.4	Understanding Microvolts	93
		5.2.5		93
		5.2.6		94
		5.2.7		95
		5.2.8		95
		5.2.9		96
		5.2.10		97
		5.2.11	Power Increase in Decibels	97
		5.2.12	Frequency Conversion	98
			- *	99
	5.3		- *	99
		5.3.1		99
		5.3.2		00
		5.3.3	Energy Storage in a Magnetic Field	00
		5.3.4		01
		5.3.5	Unit of Impedance	01
		5.3.6	RF Abbreviation	01
		5.3.7	Megahertz Abbreviation	02
		5.3.8	~	02
		5.3.9		02
		5.3.10		03
		5.3.11		04
		5.3.12	v	04
			<del>-</del>	05
	5.4	Circuit	Crunchers 1	05

		5.4.1	Formula for Calculating Current in a Circuit	105
		5.4.2	Voltage Calculation Formula	106
		5.4.3	Formula for Calculating Resistance	106
		5.4.4	Resistance Calculation	. 107
		5.4.5	Resistance Calculation	. 108
		5.4.6	Resistance Calculation from Voltage and Current	108
		5.4.7	Current in a Circuit with Given Voltage and Resistance	109
		5.4.8	Current Through a Resistor	. 110
		5.4.9	Current Through a Resistor	. 110
		5.4.10	Voltage Across a Resistor	. 111
		5.4.11	Voltage Across a Resistor	. 112
		5.4.12	Voltage Across a Resistor	112
		5.4.13	DC Current in Circuit Types	113
		5.4.14	Voltage Across Circuit Components	. 114
6	TI I	гСТРС	ONIC AND ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS	115
U	6.1		onents Breakdown	
	0.1	6.1.1	Component Opposing DC Current Flow	
		6.1.2	Adjustable Volume Control Component	
		6.1.3	Potentiometer Control Parameter	
		6.1.4	Energy Storage in Electric Fields	
		6.1.5	Electrical Component with Conductive Surfaces and Insulator	
		6.1.6	Energy Storage in Magnetic Fields	
		6.1.7	Electrical Component Constructed as a Coil of Wire	
		6.1.8	Function of an SPDT Switch	
		6.1.9	Circuit Protection Components	
		6.1.10	Battery Chemistries and Rechargeability	
			Battery Chemistries and Rechargeability	
			Switch Type in Figure T-2	
	6.2	Key S <sub>l</sub>	pecs You Need to Know	. 121
		6.2.1	Forward Voltage Drop in a Diode	. 121
		6.2.2	Component for Unidirectional Current Flow	122
		6.2.3	Electronic Switch Components	. 122
		6.2.4	Three Regions of Semiconductor Material	123
		6.2.5	Transistor Types with Gate, Drain, and Source	
		6.2.6	Cathode Lead Marking on Semiconductor Diodes	
		6.2.7	LED Light Emission	
		6.2.8	FET Abbreviation	
		6.2.9	Diode Electrodes	
		6.2.10	Power Gain Devices	
		6.2.11	Gain in Signal Amplification	
		6.2.12	Electrodes of a Bipolar Junction Transistor	
	6.3		onics Essentials	
		6.3.1	Schematic Diagrams	
		6.3.2	Component Identification in Figure T-1	
		6.3.3	Component Identification in Figure T-1	
		6.3.4 6.3.5	Identification of Component 3 in Figure T-1	. 127 128
		n 3 h	Component Identification in Figure 1-1	178

		6.3.6	Component Identification in Figure T-2	128
		6.3.7	Component Identification in Figure T-2	
		6.3.8	Component Identification in Figure T-2	
		6.3.9	Component Identification in Figure T-2	
			Component Identification in Figure T-3	
			Component Identification in Figure T-3	
			Schematic Representation in Electrical Diagrams	
	6.4		Technologies in Electronics	
	0.1	6.4.1	Rectification of Alternating Current	
		6.4.2	Understanding Relays	
		6.4.3	Reasons to Use Shielded Wire	
		6.4.4	Electrical Quantity Display	
		6.4.5	Voltage Control Circuit	
		6.4.6	Component for Voltage Reduction	
		6.4.7	Common Visual Indicator	
		6.4.8	Resonant Circuit Components	
		6.4.9	Device Combining Semiconductors and Components	
			-	
		6.4.10	ı	
		0.4.11	Resonant or Tuned Circuit	135
7	PR	ACTIO	CAL CIRCUITS	137
	7.1		Essentials	137
		7.1.1	Receiver Signal Detection Ability	
		7.1.2	Understanding a Transceiver	
		7.1.3	Frequency Conversion Devices	
		7.1.4	Receiver Signal Discrimination Ability	
		7.1.5	Circuit Generating a Specific Frequency Signal	
		7.1.6	Device for RF Band Conversion	
		7.1.7	Function of a Transceiver's PTT Input	
		7.1.8	Combining Speech with an RF Carrier Signal	
		7.1.9	Function of the SSB/CW-FM Switch on a VHF Power Amplifier .	
			Device to Increase Transmitted Power	
			RF Preamplifier Installation Location	
	7.2		Troubleshooting Essentials	
		7.2.1	Handling Over-Deviation in FM Transceivers	
		7.2.2	Unintentional Reception of Amateur Radio Signals	
		7.2.3	Radio Frequency Interference Causes	
		7.2.4	Curing Distorted Audio from RF Current	
		7.2.5	Fundamental Overload Reduction	
		7.2.6	Handling Interference Complaints	
		7.2.7	Reducing VHF Transceiver Overload	
		7.2.8	Handling Harmful Interference from a Neighbor's Home	
		7.2.9	Resolving Cable TV Interference	
		7.2.10	FM Repeater Audio Distortion	
			RF Feedback Symptoms	
	7.3		Equipment and Antenna Basics	
	1.0	7.3.1	Dummy Load Purpose	
		7.3.1	Determining Antenna Resonance	147
		1	- 123/05/110111111115	1 + 1

		7.3.3	Dummy Load Composition	148
		7.3.4	SWR Meter and Impedance Match	148
		7.3.5	Output Power Reduction in Solid-State Transmitters	149
		7.3.6	SWR Reading Interpretation	149
		7.3.7	Power Loss in Feed Lines	150
		7.3.8	Determining SWR with Instruments	150
		7.3.9	Common Causes of Coaxial Cable Failure	150
		7.3.10	UV Resistance in Coaxial Cable Jackets	151
			Disadvantages of Air Core Coaxial Cable	151
	7.4		ring Instruments in Electronics	152
		7.4.1	Measuring Electric Potential	152
		7.4.2	Voltmeter Connection for Voltage Measurement	152
		7.4.3	Multimeter Current Measurement Configuration	152
		7.4.4	Instrument for Measuring Electric Current	153
		7.4.5	Damage to a Multimeter	153
		7.4.6	Multimeter Measurements	154
		7.4.7	Types of Solder for Radio and Electronic Applications	154
		7.4.8	Cold Tin-Lead Solder Joint Appearance	155
		7.4.9	Ohmmeter Reading Across a Discharged Capacitor	155
		7.4.10	Precautions for Measuring In-Circuit Resistance	156
8			AND EMISSIONS	157
	8.1		ation Essentials	157
		8.1.1	Forms of Amplitude Modulation	157
		8.1.2	Common Modulation for VHF Packet Radio	158
		8.1.3	Long-Distance Voice Mode on VHF and UHF Bands	158
		8.1.4	Common Modulation for VHF/UHF Voice Repeaters	159
		8.1.5	Signal Bandwidth Comparison	160
		8.1.6	Preferred Sideband for 10 Meter HF, VHF, and UHF SSB Com-	1.00
		017	munications	160
		8.1.7	Characteristics of Single Sideband (SSB) Compared to FM	161
		8.1.8	Bandwidth of a Single Sideband (SSB) Voice Signal	161
		8.1.9 8.1.10	Bandwidth of a VHF Repeater FM Voice Signal	162 162
			Bandwidth of AM Fast-Scan TV Transmissions	
		8.1.11	Bandwidth for CW Signal Transmission	163 163
	8.2		Disadvantages of FM Compared to Single Sideband	164
	0.2	8.2.1	Satellite Beacon Telemetry Information	164
		8.2.2	Impact of Excessive Effective Radiated Power on Satellite Uplink	164
		8.2.3	Satellite Tracking Program Features	165
		8.2.4	Common Modes of Transmission in Amateur Radio Satellites	165
		8.2.5	Satellite Beacon	165
		8.2.6	Satellite Tracking Program Inputs	166
		8.2.7	Doppler Shift in Satellite Communications	166
		8.2.8	Satellite U/V Mode Operation	167
		8.2.9	Spin Fading of Satellite Signals	168
		8.2.10	LEO Satellite Definition	168
			Telemetry Reception from a Space Station	160

		8.2.12	Determining Satellite Uplink Power
	8.3	Radio	Basics Uncovered
		8.3.1	Locating Noise Interference Sources
		8.3.2	Hidden Transmitter Hunt Tools
		8.3.3	Operating Activity for Maximum Station Contact 171
		8.3.4	Contest Contact Procedures
		8.3.5	Grid Locator Definition
		8.3.6	Accessing IRLP Nodes Over the Air
		8.3.7	Understanding Voice Over Internet Protocol (VoIP) 173
		8.3.8	Internet Radio Linking Project (IRLP)
		8.3.9	EchoLink Protocol for Repeater Transmission
		8.3.10	EchoLink System Requirements
		8.3.11	Amateur Radio Station Connecting to the Internet 174
	8.4	Sailing	Through Digital Waves
		8.4.1	Digital Communications Modes
		8.4.2	Talkgroup on a DMR Repeater
		8.4.3	APRS Data Transmission
		8.4.4	NTSC Transmission Type
		8.4.5	Applications of APRS
		8.4.6	Understanding PSK
		8.4.7	DMR Technique Description
		8.4.8	Packet Radio Transmission Components
		8.4.9	CW in Radio Communication
		8.4.10	Supported Operating Activities in WSJT-X 179
		8.4.11	ARQ Transmission System
		8.4.12	Mesh Network in Amateur Radio
		8.4.13	Understanding FT8
9	AN'	TENN.	AS AND FEED LINES 183
	9.1	Anteni	na Basics
		9.1.1	Beam Antenna
		9.1.2	Antenna Loading Types
		9.1.3	Simple Dipole Orientation
		9.1.4	Disadvantage of Short, Flexible Antennas
		9.1.5	Resonant Frequency of a Dipole Antenna
		9.1.6	Antenna Gain Comparison
		9.1.7	Disadvantage of Using Handheld VHF Transceiver in a Vehicle 186
		9.1.8	Quarter-Wavelength Antenna Length for 146 MHz 186
		9.1.9	Half-Wavelength Dipole Antenna Length
		9.1.10	Half-Wave Dipole Antenna Radiation Pattern
		9.1.11	Antenna Gain
			Advantage of a 5/8 Wavelength Whip Antenna
	9.2		na Connection Essentials
		9.2.1	Benefits of Low SWR
		9.2.2	Common Impedance of Coaxial Cables in Amateur Radio 189
		9.2.3	Common Feed Line for Amateur Radio Antennas
		9.2.4	Function of an Antenna Tuner
		9.2.5	Effect of Frequency Increase in Coaxial Cable

	9.2.6	RF Connector Types for High Frequencies	191
	9.2.7	PL-259 Coax Connectors	192
	9.2.8	Coaxial Feed Line Loss Sources	192
	9.2.9	Erratic Changes in SWR	193
	9.2.10	Electrical Difference Between RG-58 and RG-213 Coaxial Cable .	193
	9.2.11	Lowest Loss Feed Line at VHF and UHF	194
	9.2.12	Understanding Standing Wave Ratio (SWR)	194
10 SA	FETY		197
10.1	Safety	and Function Guidelines	197
	10.1.1	Safety Hazards of a 12-Volt Storage Battery	197
	10.1.2	Health Hazards of Electrical Current	197
	10.1.3	Circuit Indicated by Black Wire Insulation	198
	10.1.4	Purpose of a Fuse in an Electrical Circuit	198
	10.1.5	Fuse Replacement Safety	199
	10.1.6	Guarding Against Electrical Shock at Your Station	199
		Lightning Arrester Installation in Coaxial Feed Line	200
	10.1.8	Fuse or Circuit Breaker Installation in 120V AC Power Circuit	200
	10.1.9	Ground Rods and Earth Connections	200
	10.1.10	Battery Charging and Discharging Hazards	201
		Hazard in Power Supply After Turning Off	201
		Precautions for Measuring High Voltages	202
10.2		and Installation Principles for Towers	202
		Good Practices for Ground Wire Installation on Towers	202
		Antenna Tower Climbing Requirements	203
		Safety When Climbing a Tower	203
		Antenna Tower Safety Precautions	204
		Safety Wire in Turnbuckles	204
		Minimum Safe Distance from Power Lines for Antenna Installation	204
	10.2.7	Safety Rules for Crank-Up Towers	205
		Proper Grounding Method for a Tower	205
		Antenna Attachment to Utility Poles	206
		Grounding Conductors for Lightning Protection	206
		Grounding Requirements for Amateur Radio Towers	207
10.3		ion Revelations	207
	10.3.1	Type of Radiation in Radio Signals	207
		Maximum Permissible Exposure and Frequency	208
		RF Safety Power Density and Duty Cycle	209
		Factors Affecting RF Exposure Near Amateur Station Antennas .	209
		Exposure Limits and Frequency	210
		Determining FCC RF Exposure Compliance	211
		Hazard of Touching an Antenna During Transmission	211
		Reducing Exposure to RF Radiation	212
		Ensuring Compliance with RF Safety Regulations	212
		Duty Cycle and RF Radiation Exposure	212
		Duty Cycle Definition for RF Exposure	213
		2RF Radiation vs. Ionizing Radiation	214
		Responsibility for RF Energy Exposure Limits	214
		1 O/ P	

# Chapter 1 COMMISSION'S RULES

## 1.1 Amateur Radio Fundamentals

## 1.1.1 Basis and Purpose of the Amateur Radio Service

#### T1A01

Which of the following is part of the Basis and Purpose of the Amateur Radio Service?

- A Providing personal radio communications for as many citizens as possible
- B Providing communications for international non-profit organizations
- C Advancing skills in the technical and communication phases of the radio art
- D All these choices are correct

The Basis and Purpose of the Amateur Radio Service is primarily focused on advancing technical and communication skills related to radio. This is a fundamental aspect of amateur radio, distinguishing it from other types of radio services. The correct answer is **C**.

# 1.1.2 Regulation of the Amateur Radio Service

#### T1A02

Which agency regulates and enforces the rules for the Amateur Radio Service in the United States?

- A FEMA
- B Homeland Security
- C The FCC
- D All these choices are correct

The Amateur Radio Service in the United States is regulated and enforced by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC). The FCC is responsible for managing the radio frequency spectrum and ensuring that all users, including amateur radio operators, comply with the established rules and regulations.

# 1.1.3 Use of Phonetic Alphabet in Station Identification

#### T1A03

What do the FCC rules state regarding the use of a phonetic alphabet for station identification in the Amateur Radio Service?

- A It is required when transmitting emergency messages
- B It is encouraged
- C It is required when in contact with foreign stations
- D All these choices are correct

The use of a phonetic alphabet in station identification is not mandatory but is encouraged by the FCC rules. This helps in ensuring clear and accurate communication, especially in situations where verbal clarity is essential.

NAT	ΓΟ Phone	tic A	Alphabet						
A	Alpha	F	Foxtrot	K	Kilo	Р	Papa	U	Uniform
В	Bravo	G	Golf	L	Lima	Q	Quebec	V	Victor
C	Charlie	Н	Hotel	Μ	Mike	R	Romeo	W	Whiskey
D	Delta	I	India	N	November	S	Sierra	X	X-ray
E	Echo	J	Juliet	Ο	Oscar	$\Gamma$	Tango	Y	Yankee
								$\mathbf{Z}$	Zulu

# 1.1.4 Number of Operator/Primary Station Licenses

#### T1A04

How many operator/primary station license grants may be held by any one person?

- A One
- B No more than two
- C One for each band on which the person plans to operate
- D One for each permanent station location from which the person plans to operate

#### **Explanation**

In the context of radio operation, an operator/primary station license is a legal authorization granted by the regulatory authority (such as the FCC in the United States) that allows an individual to operate a radio station. According to the regulations, any one person is allowed to hold only one such license. This ensures that the allocation of licenses is fair and that no single individual can monopolize the available resources or frequencies. Therefore, the correct answer is **A: One**.

#### 1.1.5 FCC License Grant Verification

#### T1A05

What proves that the FCC has issued an operator/primary license grant?

- A A printed copy of the certificate of successful completion of examination
- B An email notification from the NCVEC granting the license
- C The license appears in the FCC ULS database
- D All these choices are correct

## Intuitive Explanation

Think of the FCC ULS database as the ultimate hall of fame for radio operators. If your license is listed there, it's like getting your name on the scoreboard—official and undeniable. The other options? They're just practice rounds or friendly nods, but not the real deal.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) maintains the Universal Licensing System (ULS) database, which is the authoritative source for all issued licenses. When the FCC grants a license, it is recorded in this database, making it the definitive proof of licensure. While other documents or notifications may indicate progress or completion of steps toward licensure, only the presence of the license in the ULS database confirms that the FCC has officially issued the license. This ensures transparency and accessibility for verification purposes.

#### 1.1.6 Definition of a Beacon

## T1A06

What is the FCC Part 97 definition of a beacon?

- A A government transmitter marking the amateur radio band edges
- B A bulletin sent by the FCC to announce a national emergency
- C A continuous transmission of weather information authorized in the amateur bands by the National Weather Service
- D An amateur station transmitting communications for the purposes of observing propagation or related experimental activities

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to figure out how far your voice can travel in a big, open field. You might shout and listen for echoes to see how far the sound goes. In the world of amateur radio, a beacon is like that shout. It's a special signal sent out by amateur radio operators to study how radio waves travel through the air. This helps them understand things like how weather or the time of day affects radio communication.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In the context of FCC Part 97, a beacon is defined as an amateur station that transmits signals specifically for the purpose of observing propagation characteristics or conducting related experimental activities. This means that the primary function of a beacon is to provide data on how radio waves propagate under various conditions, which can be influenced by factors such as atmospheric conditions, frequency, and time of day. Beacons are crucial for amateur radio operators who are interested in understanding and experimenting with radio wave behavior, which can enhance their ability to communicate over long distances.

## 1.1.7 FCC Part 97 Definition of a Space Station

#### T1A07

What is the FCC Part 97 definition of a space station?

- A Any satellite orbiting Earth
- B A manned satellite orbiting Earth
- C An amateur station located more than 50 km above Earth's surface
- D An amateur station using amateur radio satellites for relay of signals

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're playing a game where you have to define what counts as a space station. The FCC (Federal Communications Commission) has a rulebook called Part 97, and in this rulebook, they say a space station is any amateur radio station that's more than 50 km above the Earth's surface. So, it's not just any satellite or a manned one, but specifically an amateur station that's high up in the sky.

## Advanced Explanation

The FCC Part 97 regulations govern the amateur radio service in the United States. According to these regulations, a space station is defined as an amateur station located more than 50 km above the Earth's surface. This definition distinguishes space stations from other types of satellites or manned spacecraft. The 50 km threshold is significant because it marks the boundary of the Earth's atmosphere and the beginning of space, as recognized by the FCC. This definition ensures that amateur radio operators have clear guidelines for operating in space, which is crucial for coordination and compliance with international space regulations.

# 1.1.8 Entities for Transmit/Receive Channels Recommendation

#### T1A08

Which of the following entities recommends transmit/receive channels and other parameters for auxiliary and repeater stations?

- A Frequency Spectrum Manager appointed by the FCC
- B Volunteer Frequency Coordinator recognized by local amateurs
- C FCC Regional Field Office
- D International Telecommunication Union

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you and your friends are organizing a big event where everyone needs to use walkie-talkies. To avoid everyone talking over each other, you need someone to assign different channels for different groups. In the world of amateur radio, this role is played by a **Volunteer Frequency Coordinator**. They are like the event organizer who ensures that everyone gets a clear channel to communicate without interference.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In amateur radio, auxiliary and repeater stations require specific transmit/receive channels and parameters to operate efficiently without causing interference. The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) does not directly assign these channels. Instead, this task is delegated to **Volunteer Frequency Coordinators** who are recognized by the local amateur radio community. These coordinators have a deep understanding of the local frequency usage and can make informed recommendations to ensure smooth operation of auxiliary and repeater stations. This decentralized approach allows for more flexible and community-driven management of radio frequencies.

# 1.1.9 Frequency Coordinator Selection

#### T1A09

Who selects a Frequency Coordinator?

- A The FCC Office of Spectrum Management and Coordination Policy
- B The local chapter of the Office of National Council of Independent Frequency Coordinators
- C Amateur operators in a local or regional area whose stations are eligible to be repeater or auxiliary stations
- D FCC Regional Field Office

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you and your friends are organizing a big event, like a concert, and you need to decide who will be in charge of making sure everyone gets a turn to perform without overlapping. In the world of amateur radio, this person is called the Frequency Coordinator. The Frequency Coordinator ensures that different radio stations don't interfere with

each other. So, who gets to pick this important person? It's the amateur radio operators in the local area who are eligible to use repeaters or auxiliary stations. They know the local needs best and can choose someone who will do a good job.

## **Advanced Explanation**

In amateur radio, a Frequency Coordinator is responsible for managing the use of frequencies within a specific area to prevent interference between different stations. This role is crucial for maintaining orderly communication, especially in areas with a high density of amateur radio operators. The selection of a Frequency Coordinator is not done by a governmental body like the FCC, but rather by the amateur operators themselves. Specifically, it is the operators in a local or regional area who are eligible to operate repeater or auxiliary stations that select the Frequency Coordinator. This ensures that the coordinator is someone who understands the local communication needs and can effectively manage the frequency assignments.

#### 1.1.10 RACES Overview

## T1A10

What is the Radio Amateur Civil Emergency Service (RACES)?

- A A radio service using amateur frequencies for emergency management or civil defense communications
- B A radio service using amateur stations for emergency management or civil defense communications
- C An emergency service using amateur operators certified by a civil defense organization as being enrolled in that organization
- D All these choices are correct

The Radio Amateur Civil Emergency Service (RACES) is a comprehensive service that encompasses the use of amateur radio frequencies, stations, and certified operators for emergency management and civil defense communications. All the provided choices accurately describe aspects of RACES, making the correct answer **D**.

#### 1.1.11 Willful Interference in Amateur Radio

#### T1A11

When is willful interference to other amateur radio stations permitted?

- A To stop another amateur station that is breaking the FCC rules
- B At no time
- C When making short test transmissions
- D At any time, stations in the Amateur Radio Service are not protected from willful interference

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're in a classroom where everyone is supposed to take turns speaking. If someone starts talking out of turn, it would be rude to shout over them to make them stop. Similarly, in amateur radio, even if another station is breaking the rules, it's not okay to interfere with their transmission. The proper way to handle it is to report the issue to the authorities, not to take matters into your own hands.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

Willful interference in amateur radio is strictly prohibited under FCC regulations. The Amateur Radio Service is designed to promote communication and experimentation, and interference disrupts these activities. Even if another station is violating FCC rules, it is not the responsibility of individual operators to enforce these rules through interference. Instead, operators should report violations to the FCC, which has the authority to take appropriate action. This ensures that the amateur radio community remains a cooperative and respectful environment for all participants.

## 1.2 Radio Practice Essentials

# 1.2.1 Frequency Ranges for Technician Licensees

#### T1B01

Which of the following frequency ranges are available for phone operation by Technician licensees?

- A 28.050 MHz to 28.150 MHz
- B 28.100 MHz to 28.300 MHz
- C 28.300 MHz to 28.500 MHz
- D 28.500 MHz to 28.600 MHz

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of the radio frequency spectrum as a big highway with different lanes. Each lane is reserved for specific types of communication. For Technician licensees, the lane marked 28.300 MHz to 28.500 MHz is where you can make phone calls. The other lanes are either for different types of communication or are reserved for other license classes.

#### Advanced Explanation

The frequency range from 28.300 MHz to 28.500 MHz is part of the 10-meter band, which is allocated for amateur radio use. Technician licensees are permitted to use this range for phone (voice) communication. The other options provided either fall outside the authorized frequency range for Technician licensees or are designated for other modes of communication such as data or Morse code. Understanding the frequency allocations for different license classes is crucial for operating within the legal limits of amateur radio.

# 1.2.2 Contacting the International Space Station (ISS) on VHF Bands

## T1B02

Which amateurs may contact the International Space Station (ISS) on VHF bands?

- A Any amateur holding a General class or higher license
- B Any amateur holding a Technician class or higher license
- C Any amateur holding a General class or higher license who has applied for and received approval from NASA
- D Any amateur holding a Technician class or higher license who has applied for and received approval from NASA

#### **Explanation**

Amateur radio operators with a Technician class license or higher are permitted to contact the International Space Station (ISS) on VHF bands. This privilege is not restricted to General class license holders, and no special approval from NASA is required. The Technician class license is the entry-level license in the United States, and it grants access to VHF frequencies, which are commonly used for satellite communications, including those with the ISS.

# 1.2.3 6 Meter Amateur Band Frequency

#### T1B03

Which frequency is in the 6 meter amateur band?

- A 49.00 MHz
- B 52.525 MHz
- C 28.50 MHz
- D 222.15 MHz

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

The 6 meter amateur band is a specific range of frequencies allocated for amateur radio use. Think of it like a lane on a highway reserved just for amateur radio operators. The question is asking which of the given frequencies falls within this special lane. The correct answer is the one that fits within the 6 meter band's frequency range.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

The 6 meter amateur band spans from 50 MHz to 54 MHz. This band is part of the Very High Frequency (VHF) spectrum and is commonly used for local and regional communication. To determine which frequency is within this band, we simply check if it falls within the 50 MHz to 54 MHz range. Among the choices, 52.525 MHz is the only frequency that lies within this range, making it the correct answer.

## 1.2.4 Amateur Band for 146.52 MHz

#### T1B04

Which amateur band includes 146.52 MHz?

- A 6 meters
- B 20 meters
- C 70 centimeters
- D 2 meters

The question asks about the amateur radio band that includes the frequency 146.52 MHz. The correct answer is **D**, which corresponds to the 2-meter band. This band is commonly used for VHF (Very High Frequency) communications and is popular among amateur radio operators for local and regional communication.

## 1.2.5 Usage of 219 to 220 MHz Segment in 1.25 Meter Band

#### T1B05

How may amateurs use the 219 to 220 MHz segment of 1.25 meter band?

- A Spread spectrum only
- B Fast-scan television only
- C Emergency traffic only
- D Fixed digital message forwarding systems only

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine the 219 to 220 MHz frequency range as a special lane on a highway. Just like certain lanes are reserved for specific types of vehicles, this frequency segment is reserved for a specific type of communication. In this case, it's like a digital post office where messages are forwarded from one place to another, but only in a fixed manner. So, no spreading out, no TV broadcasts, and no emergency calls—just digital message forwarding.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

The 219 to 220 MHz segment of the 1.25 meter band is allocated for fixed digital message forwarding systems. This means that amateur radio operators can use this frequency range exclusively for the purpose of forwarding digital messages in a fixed manner. Spread spectrum, fast-scan television, and emergency traffic are not permitted in this segment. This allocation ensures that the frequency is used efficiently for its intended purpose, minimizing interference and maximizing utility for digital communication systems.

## 1.2.6 Technician Class HF Phone Privileges

#### T1B06

On which HF bands does a Technician class operator have phone privileges?

- A None
- B 10 meter band only
- C 80 meter, 40 meter, 15 meter, and 10 meter bands
- D 30 meter band only

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of the HF bands as different channels on a radio. A Technician class operator is like a new driver who can only drive on certain roads. In this case, the road they can use for phone (voice) communication is the 10 meter band. Other bands are either off-limits or reserved for different types of communication.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

The HF (High Frequency) bands range from 3 to 30 MHz and are divided into several segments, each with specific allocations for different modes of communication. Technician class operators in the United States are granted limited privileges on the HF bands. Specifically, they are allowed to use phone (voice) communication on the 10 meter band (28.000 - 29.700 MHz). This band is particularly useful for local and long-distance communication, especially during periods of good propagation. Other HF bands, such as 80 meters, 40 meters, and 30 meters, are either not allocated for phone use by Technician class operators or are reserved for other modes like CW (Continuous Wave) or digital communication.

# 1.2.7 CW-Only VHF/UHF Band Segments

#### T1B07

Which of the following VHF/UHF band segments are limited to CW only?

- A 50.0 MHz to 50.1 MHz and 144.0 MHz to 144.1 MHz
- B 219 MHz to 220 MHz and 420.0 MHz to 420.1 MHz
- C 902.0 MHz to 902.1 MHz
- D All these choices are correct

#### Intuitive Explanation

Imagine the radio spectrum as a big highway with different lanes for different types of traffic. Some lanes are reserved for specific types of vehicles, like motorcycles or trucks. In the same way, certain frequency ranges in the VHF/UHF bands are reserved exclusively for CW (Continuous Wave) transmissions, which are like the motorcycles of the radio world—simple and efficient. The question is asking which of these lanes (frequency ranges) are for CW only.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In the VHF (Very High Frequency) and UHF (Ultra High Frequency) bands, specific segments are allocated exclusively for CW (Continuous Wave) transmissions. CW is a type of Morse code transmission that uses a single frequency carrier wave. The segments 50.0 MHz to 50.1 MHz and 144.0 MHz to 144.1 MHz are designated for CW only, ensuring that these frequencies are used for this specific mode of communication. This allocation helps in minimizing interference and maintaining clear communication channels for CW operators. The other options listed do not fall under the CW-only restrictions, making option A the correct answer.

## 1.2.8 US Amateurs in Secondary Band Segments

#### T1B08

How are US amateurs restricted in segments of bands where the Amateur Radio Service is secondary?

- A U.S. amateurs may find non-amateur stations in those segments, and must avoid interfering with them
- B U.S. amateurs must give foreign amateur stations priority in those segments
- C International communications are not permitted in those segments
- D Digital transmissions are not permitted in those segments

#### **Explanation**

In segments of the radio spectrum where the Amateur Radio Service is designated as a secondary user, U.S. amateurs must be cautious. The primary users of these segments have priority, and amateurs must ensure they do not cause interference to these non-amateur stations. This means that while amateurs can operate in these segments, they must yield to primary users and avoid any actions that could disrupt their communications.

# 1.2.9 Transmit Frequency Placement

## T1B09

Why should you not set your transmit frequency to be exactly at the edge of an amateur band or sub-band?

- A To allow for calibration error in the transmitter frequency display
- B So that modulation sidebands do not extend beyond the band edge
- C To allow for transmitter frequency drift
- D All these choices are correct

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to park your car right at the edge of a parking spot. If you're even a tiny bit off, you might end up in the next spot or even outside the parking area. Similarly, setting your transmit frequency exactly at the edge of a band is risky

because small errors or changes can push your signal outside the allowed range, causing interference or violating regulations.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

When transmitting, several factors can affect the exact frequency of your signal:

- Calibration Error: The frequency display on your transmitter might not be perfectly accurate. Even a small error can push your signal out of the allowed band.
- Modulation Sidebands: When you modulate your signal (e.g., with voice or data), sidebands are created. These sidebands extend beyond your carrier frequency, and if your carrier is at the edge, the sidebands can spill over into adjacent bands.
- Frequency Drift: Transmitters can experience frequency drift due to temperature changes or component aging. This drift can move your signal out of the allowed band if it's initially set too close to the edge.

Therefore, it's prudent to set your transmit frequency slightly inside the band edge to account for these potential issues.

## 1.2.10 SSB Phone Usage in Amateur Bands Above 50 MHz

#### T1B10

Where may SSB phone be used in amateur bands above 50 MHz?

- A Only in sub-bands allocated to General class or higher licensees
- B Only on repeaters
- C In at least some segment of all these bands
- D On any band if the power is limited to 25 watts

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of the amateur radio bands as a big playground with different areas for different activities. SSB (Single Sideband) phone is like a specific game you can play in certain parts of the playground. The question is asking where you can play this game in the higher frequency bands (above 50 MHz). The correct answer is that you can play this game in at least some part of all these higher frequency bands, not just in specific areas or with certain restrictions.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In amateur radio, SSB phone is a mode of communication that is efficient in terms of bandwidth and power. The question pertains to the allocation of frequencies above 50 MHz for SSB phone usage. According to the FCC regulations, SSB phone can be used in at least some segment of all amateur bands above 50 MHz. This means that operators have the flexibility to use SSB phone in various parts of these bands, not just in specific sub-bands or on repeaters. The power limitation of 25 watts is not a determining factor for the usage of SSB phone in these bands. Therefore, the correct answer is that SSB phone can be used in at least some segment of all these bands.

# 1.2.11 Maximum Peak Envelope Power for Technician Class Operators

#### T1B11

What is the maximum peak envelope power output for Technician class operators in their HF band segments?

- A 200 watts
- B 100 watts
- C 50 watts
- D 10 watts

## Intuitive Explanation

Think of peak envelope power (PEP) as the maximum power your radio can output when it's really pushing the signal. For Technician class operators, the FCC has set a limit on how much power you can use on the HF bands. This is to ensure that everyone gets a fair chance to communicate without causing interference. The maximum PEP allowed is 200 watts. So, if you're a Technician class operator, you can use up to 200 watts of power on the HF bands, but no more!

#### Advanced Explanation

Peak Envelope Power (PEP) is the maximum power level that occurs during a single cycle of a modulated signal. For Technician class operators, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) regulates the maximum PEP output to ensure efficient use of the radio spectrum and to minimize interference. According to FCC rules, the maximum PEP output for Technician class operators in their HF band segments is 200 watts. This limit is designed to balance the need for effective communication with the need to prevent excessive power usage that could disrupt other users of the spectrum.

# 1.2.12 Maximum Peak Envelope Power for Technician Class Operators

#### T1B12

Except for some specific restrictions, what is the maximum peak envelope power output for Technician class operators using frequencies above 30 MHz?

- A 50 watts
- B 100 watts
- C 500 watts
- D 1500 watts

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of peak envelope power (PEP) as the maximum power your radio can output in short bursts. For Technician class operators, the FCC allows a pretty generous amount of power—up to 1500 watts—when you're using frequencies above 30 MHz. This means you can transmit with a lot of power, but remember, there are some specific restrictions that might apply depending on the situation.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

Peak Envelope Power (PEP) is the maximum power level that a transmitter can output during a single cycle of the modulation envelope. For Technician class operators, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) sets the maximum PEP at 1500 watts for frequencies above 30 MHz. This limit ensures that operators can transmit effectively without causing excessive interference. However, certain restrictions may apply based on the specific frequency band and the type of operation. Always consult the FCC regulations for detailed guidelines.

# 1.3 Key Licensing Protocols

### 1.3.1 Available FCC License Classes

#### T1C01

For which license classes are new licenses currently available from the FCC?

- A Novice, Technician, General, Amateur Extra
- B Technician, Technician Plus, General, Amateur Extra
- C Novice, Technician Plus, General, Advanced
- D Technician, General, Amateur Extra

The question is straightforward and does not require a detailed explanation. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{D}$ , which lists the license classes currently available from the FCC: Technician, General, and Amateur Extra.

# 1.3.2 Vanity Call Sign Eligibility

#### T1C02

Who may select a desired call sign under the vanity call sign rules?

- A Only a licensed amateur with a General or Amateur Extra Class license
- B Only a licensed amateur with an Amateur Extra Class license
- C Only a licensed a mateur who has been licensed continuously for more than  $10~{\rm years}$
- D Any licensed amateur

The vanity call sign rules allow any licensed amateur radio operator to select a desired call sign, regardless of their license class or how long they have been licensed. This makes option D the correct answer.

# 1.3.3 Permitted International Communications for FCC-Licensed Amateur Radio Stations

#### T1C03

What types of international communications are an FCC-licensed amateur radio station permitted to make?

- A Communications incidental to the purposes of the Amateur Radio Service and remarks of a personal character
- B Communications incidental to conducting business or remarks of a personal nature
- C Only communications incidental to contest exchanges; all other communications are prohibited
- D Any communications that would be permitted by an international broadcast station

FCC-licensed amateur radio stations are allowed to engage in communications that are incidental to the purposes of the Amateur Radio Service, which includes technical experimentation, self-training, and the exchange of messages. Additionally, personal remarks are permitted as long as they do not involve business or commercial activities. This ensures that amateur radio remains a non-commercial service focused on personal and technical communication.

# 1.3.4 Consequences of Unreachable Email for FCC

#### T1C04

What may happen if the FCC is unable to reach you by email?

- A Fine and suspension of operator license
- B Revocation of the station license or suspension of the operator license
- C Revocation of access to the license record in the FCC system
- D Nothing; there is no such requirement

The FCC requires licensees to maintain a valid email address on file. If the FCC cannot reach you by email, it may result in serious consequences, including the revocation of your station license or the suspension of your operator license. This ensures that the FCC can effectively communicate important regulatory information and updates.

## 1.3.5 Valid Technician Class Call Sign Format

#### T1C05

Which of the following is a valid Technician class call sign format?

- A KF1XXX
- B KA1X
- C W1XX
- D All these choices are correct

## Explanation

A Technician class call sign in the United States typically follows a specific format. The correct format includes a prefix, a numeral, and a suffix. The prefix is usually a combination of letters, the numeral represents the region, and the suffix is a series of letters. In this case, **KF1XXX** is the only option that adheres to the standard format for a Technician class call sign. The other options either lack the correct number of characters or do not follow the expected structure.

# 1.3.6 Transmission Locations for FCC-Licensed Amateur Stations

#### T1C06

From which of the following locations may an FCC-licensed amateur station transmit?

- A From within any country that belongs to the International Telecommunication Union
- B From within any country that is a member of the United Nations
- C From anywhere within International Telecommunication Union (ITU) Regions 2 and 3
- D From any vessel or craft located in international waters and documented or registered in the United States

## Explanation

An FCC-licensed amateur station is authorized to transmit from any vessel or craft located in international waters, provided that the vessel or craft is documented or registered in the United States. This ensures that the station operates under the jurisdiction of the FCC, even when not within the physical borders of the United States. The other options do not align with the specific regulations governing FCC-licensed amateur stations.

# 1.3.7 License Revocation or Suspension

#### T1C07

Which of the following can result in revocation of the station license or suspension of the operator license?

- A Failure to inform the FCC of any changes in the amateur station following performance of an RF safety environmental evaluation
- B Failure to provide and maintain a correct email address with the FCC
- C Failure to obtain FCC type acceptance prior to using a home-built transmitter
- D Failure to have a copy of your license available at your station

This question is straightforward and pertains to the regulatory requirements set by the FCC for amateur radio operators. The correct answer is **B**, as maintaining an accurate email address with the FCC is a critical requirement for communication and compliance. Failure to do so can lead to serious consequences, including the revocation of the station license or suspension of the operator license.

## 1.3.8 FCC-Issued Amateur Radio License Term

#### T1C08

What is the normal term for an FCC-issued amateur radio license?

- A Five years
- B Life
- C Ten years
- D Eight years

The normal term for an FCC-issued amateur radio license is ten years. This is a straightforward regulation question, and the correct answer is clearly stated in the options.

#### 1.3.9 Grace Period for Amateur License Renewal

### T1C09

What is the grace period for renewal if an amateur license expires?

- A Two years
- B Three years
- C Five years
- D Ten years

The grace period for renewing an expired amateur license is two years. This means that if your license expires, you have up to two years to renew it without having to retake the examination.

# 1.3.10 Transmission Timing After License Examination

## T1C10

How soon after passing the examination for your first amateur radio license may you transmit on the amateur radio bands?

- A Immediately on receiving your Certificate of Successful Completion of Examination (CSCE)
- B As soon as your operator/station license grant appears on the ARRL website
- C As soon as your operator/station license grant appears in the FCC's license database
- D As soon as you receive your license in the mail from the FCC

## Explanation

After passing the amateur radio license examination, you are allowed to transmit on the amateur radio bands as soon as your operator/station license grant appears in the FCC's license database. This is the official point at which your license is considered active, even if you have not yet received the physical license in the mail. The Certificate of Successful Completion of Examination (CSCE) does not grant immediate transmission privileges, and the ARRL website is not the official source for license activation.

# 1.3.11 Transmitting with an Expired License

### T1C11

If your license has expired and is still within the allowable grace period, may you continue to transmit on the amateur radio bands?

- A Yes, for up to two years
- B Yes, as soon as you apply for renewal
- C Yes, for up to one year
- D No, you must wait until the license has been renewed

This question is straightforward and does not require a detailed technical explanation. The key point is that even if your license is within the grace period, you are not allowed to transmit until it has been officially renewed. This ensures compliance with regulatory requirements and avoids potential penalties.

# 1.4 Rules of Engagement

# 1.4.1 Prohibited Countries for FCC-Licensed Amateur Radio Communications

#### T1D01

With which countries are FCC-licensed amateur radio stations prohibited from exchanging communications?

- A Any country whose administration has notified the International Telecommunication Union (ITU) that it objects to such communications
- B Any country whose administration has notified the American Radio Relay League (ARRL) that it objects to such communications
- C Any country banned from such communications by the International Amateur Radio Union (IARU)
- D Any country banned from making such communications by the American Radio Relay League (ARRL)

#### **Explanation**

FCC-licensed amateur radio stations are prohibited from exchanging communications with any country that has formally notified the International Telecommunication Union (ITU) of its objection to such communications. This regulation ensures compliance with international agreements and respects the sovereignty of other nations.

# 1.4.2 Prohibition of One-Way Transmissions

#### T1D02

Under which of the following circumstances are one-way transmissions by an amateur station prohibited?

- A In all circumstances
- B Broadcasting
- C International Morse Code Practice
- D Telecommand or transmissions of telemetry

#### **Explanation**

One-way transmissions in amateur radio are generally allowed for specific purposes such as telecommand, telemetry, and Morse code practice. However, broadcasting, which involves transmitting content intended for the general public, is prohibited. This regulation ensures that amateur radio remains a non-commercial service primarily for personal communication and experimentation.

# 1.4.3 Transmitting Encoded Messages

#### T1D03

When is it permissible to transmit messages encoded to obscure their meaning?

- A Only during contests
- B Only when transmitting certain approved digital codes
- C Only when transmitting control commands to space stations or radio control craft
- D Never

#### Explanation

This question addresses the regulations surrounding the transmission of encoded messages in amateur radio. The correct answer is **C**, which specifies that encoded messages are only allowed when sending control commands to space stations or radio control craft. This ensures that the use of encoded messages is limited to specific, authorized purposes, maintaining the transparency and openness of amateur radio communications.

## 1.4.4 Authorized Transmission of Music in Amateur Stations

#### T1D04

Under what conditions is an amateur station authorized to transmit music using a phone emission?

- A When incidental to an authorized retransmission of manned spacecraft communications
- B When the music produces no spurious emissions
- C When transmissions are limited to less than three minutes per hour
- D When the music is transmitted above 1280 MHz

Amateur radio stations are generally not allowed to transmit music, as it is considered a form of entertainment and not within the scope of amateur radio communications. However, there is an exception when the music is incidental to an authorized retransmission of manned spacecraft communications. This means that if the music is part of a broadcast from a manned spacecraft and the amateur station is retransmitting it, the transmission is allowed. The other options do not provide valid conditions for transmitting music in amateur radio.

# 1.4.5 Use of Amateur Radio Stations for Equipment Sales

#### T1D05

When may amateur radio operators use their stations to notify other amateurs of the availability of equipment for sale or trade?

- A Never
- B When the equipment is not the personal property of either the station licensee, or the control operator, or their close relatives
- C When no profit is made on the sale
- D When selling amateur radio equipment and not on a regular basis

Amateur radio operators are allowed to use their stations to notify other amateurs about the availability of equipment for sale or trade, but only under specific conditions. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{D}$ , which states that this is permissible when selling amateur radio equipment and not on a regular basis. This ensures that the primary purpose of amateur radio remains communication and not commercial activity.

# 1.4.6 Restrictions on Indecent or Obscene Language

## T1D06

What, if any, are the restrictions concerning transmission of language that may be considered indecent or obscene?

- A The FCC maintains a list of words that are not permitted to be used on amateur frequencies
- B Any such language is prohibited
- C The ITU maintains a list of words that are not permitted to be used on amateur frequencies
- D There is no such prohibition

The question is straightforward and pertains to the regulations governing amateur radio communications. The correct answer is **B**, which states that any language considered indecent or obscene is prohibited. This is in line with the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules, which aim to maintain a professional and respectful environment on amateur radio frequencies.

# 1.4.7 Types of Amateur Stations for Automatic Retransmission

#### T1D07

What types of amateur stations can automatically retransmit the signals of other amateur stations?

- A Auxiliary, beacon, or Earth stations
- B Earth, repeater, or space stations
- C Beacon, repeater, or space stations
- D Repeater, auxiliary, or space stations

This question is straightforward and pertains to the types of amateur radio stations that are authorized to automatically retransmit signals from other amateur stations. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{D}$ , which identifies repeater, auxiliary, and space stations as the types of stations capable of this function.

## 1.4.8 Compensation for Amateur Station Operation

#### T1D08

In which of the following circumstances may the control operator of an amateur station receive compensation for operating that station?

- A When the communication is related to the sale of amateur equipment by the control operator's employer
- B When the communication is incidental to classroom instruction at an educational institution
- C When the communication is made to obtain emergency information for a local broadcast station
- D All these choices are correct

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of this question like a teacher getting paid to teach a class. If the teacher uses a ham radio as part of the lesson, it's okay for them to get paid for teaching, even if they use the radio. But if they're selling radios or getting emergency info for a news station, that's a different story!

#### **Advanced Explanation**

According to FCC regulations, amateur radio operators are generally not allowed to receive compensation for operating their stations. However, there are specific exceptions. One such exception is when the communication is incidental to classroom instruction at an educational institution. This means that if a teacher uses amateur radio as part of their teaching activities, they can receive their normal salary for teaching, even if they use the radio during class. This exception is designed to encourage the use of amateur radio in educational settings without violating the general prohibition on compensation.

# 1.4.9 Amateur Station Transmissions in Emergencies

#### T1D09

When may amateur stations transmit information in support of broadcasting, program production, or news gathering, assuming no other means is available?

- A When such communications are directly related to the immediate safety of human life or protection of property
- B When broadcasting communications to or from the space shuttle
- C Where noncommercial programming is gathered and supplied exclusively to the National Public Radio network
- D Never

#### **Explanation**

Amateur radio stations are generally not permitted to transmit information in support of broadcasting, program production, or news gathering. However, there is an exception when such communications are directly related to the immediate safety of human life or protection of property. This exception ensures that amateur radio can be used as a vital communication tool in emergencies when no other means of communication are available.

## 1.4.10 Definition of Broadcasting in Amateur Radio Service

#### T1D10

How does the FCC define broadcasting for the Amateur Radio Service?

- A Two-way transmissions by amateur stations
- B Any transmission made by the licensed station
- C Transmission of messages directed only to amateur operators
- D Transmissions intended for reception by the general public

The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) defines broadcasting in the Amateur Radio Service as transmissions that are intended for reception by the general public. This distinguishes broadcasting from other types of transmissions, such as two-way communications or messages directed specifically to amateur operators.

## 1.4.11 Transmission Without Identification

#### T1D11

When may an amateur station transmit without identifying on the air?

- A When the transmissions are of a brief nature to make station adjustments
- B When the transmissions are unmodulated
- C When the transmitted power level is below 1 watt
- D When transmitting signals to control model craft

#### **Explanation**

Amateur radio operators are generally required to identify their station at regular intervals during transmissions. However, there are specific exceptions to this rule. One such exception is when the transmissions are used to control model craft. In this case, the operator is allowed to transmit without identifying the station. This exception is in place to allow for the practical operation of model craft without the need for constant identification, which could interfere with the control signals.

# 1.5 Operating Rules for Amateur Radio

# 1.5.1 Transmission Without a Control Operator

#### T1E01

When may an amateur station transmit without a control operator?

- A When using automatic control, such as in the case of a repeater
- B When the station licensee is away and another licensed amateur is using the station
- C When the transmitting station is an auxiliary station
- D Never

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're driving a car. You wouldn't let the car drive itself without someone in the driver's seat, right? Similarly, an amateur radio station always needs a control operator to make sure everything is running smoothly and legally. Even if the station is automated or someone else is using it, there must always be a responsible person in charge. So, the answer is simple: **Never** can a station transmit without a control operator.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In amateur radio operations, the control operator is the person responsible for ensuring that the station complies with all applicable rules and regulations. According to the FCC rules, a control operator must always be present when the station is transmitting. This is true even in cases where the station is operating under automatic control, such as a repeater, or when another licensed amateur is using the station. The control operator does not necessarily have to be physically present at the station but must be able to take control if necessary. Therefore, the correct answer is **D**: **Never**, as there is no scenario where an amateur station can legally transmit without a control operator.

# 1.5.2 Control Operator of an Amateur Satellite Station

#### T1E02

Who may be the control operator of a station communicating through an amateur satellite or space station?

- A Only an Amateur Extra Class operator
- B A General class or higher licensee with a satellite operator certification
- C Only an Amateur Extra Class operator who is also an AMSAT member
- D Any amateur allowed to transmit on the satellite uplink frequency

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a walkie-talkie that can talk to a satellite in space. Now, who gets to press the button and send messages? It's not just the super-duper experts or the people with special badges. Nope! If you're allowed to use the frequency that talks to the satellite, you're in! It's like saying, If you're allowed to use the playground, you can play on the swings. So, anyone who's allowed to use the satellite's playground can be the one sending messages.

## **Advanced Explanation**

In the context of amateur radio, the control operator is the person responsible for ensuring that the station operates within the regulations set by the licensing authority. For amateur satellites or space stations, the key requirement is that the operator must be authorized to transmit on the satellite's uplink frequency. This authorization is determined by the operator's license class, which grants them privileges on specific frequency bands.

The correct answer, **D**, emphasizes that any amateur operator who is legally permitted to transmit on the satellite's uplink frequency can act as the control operator. This is in contrast to the other options, which impose additional restrictions such as requiring an Amateur Extra Class license or specific certifications. The regulations are designed to ensure that only qualified individuals operate the equipment, but they do not unnecessarily limit the pool of potential operators beyond the basic frequency authorization.

# 1.5.3 Designation of Station Control Operator

## T1E03

Who must designate the station control operator?

- A. The station licensee
- B. The FCC
- C. The frequency coordinator
- D. Any licensed operator

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a cool treehouse, and you're the boss of it. You get to decide who gets to be in charge when you're not around. In the world of radio, the person who owns the radio station (the station licensee) is like the boss of the treehouse. They get to pick who's in charge of running the station, called the control operator. It's not the government (FCC), the person who helps pick the radio frequency (frequency coordinator), or just any random person with a license. It's the boss—the station licensee!

#### Advanced Explanation

In the context of radio operations, the station licensee holds the legal responsibility for the station's compliance with FCC regulations. According to FCC rules, the station licensee must designate the control operator, who is responsible for the station's operation during a specific period. This designation ensures that the station operates within the legal framework and adheres to technical standards. The control operator must hold the appropriate license class for the station's operation, but the authority to designate this operator lies solely with the station licensee. This process underscores the licensee's accountability for the station's activities.

## 1.5.4 Transmitting Frequency Privileges of an Amateur Station

#### T1E04

What determines the transmitting frequency privileges of an amateur station?

- A The frequency authorized by the frequency coordinator
- B The frequencies printed on the license grant
- C The highest class of operator license held by anyone on the premises
- D The class of operator license held by the control operator

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're at a party, and there's a DJ controlling the music. The DJ decides what songs to play and when to play them. In the world of amateur radio, the DJ is the control operator, and the songs are the frequencies you can transmit on. The type of license the control operator has determines what songs they can play. So, if the DJ has a fancy license, they can play more songs (frequencies). If not, they're limited to a smaller playlist. It's all about the DJ's credentials!

#### Advanced Explanation

In amateur radio, the transmitting frequency privileges are governed by the class of operator license held by the control operator. The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) in the United States, for example, assigns different frequency bands and modes of operation based on the license class. The control operator is the person responsible for the station's transmissions, and their license class dictates the permissible frequencies and power levels.

For instance, a General class license holder has access to more frequency bands compared to a Technician class license holder. This hierarchical structure ensures that operators with more advanced knowledge and skills have broader privileges, promoting safe and effective use of the radio spectrum.

#### 1.5.5 Amateur Station's Control Point

#### T1E05

What is an amateur station's control point?

- A The location of the station's transmitting antenna
- B The location of the station's transmitting apparatus
- C The location at which the control operator function is performed
- D The mailing address of the station licensee

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're playing a video game, and you have a special controller that lets you control your character. The control point is like where you're sitting with your controller, making all the moves. For an amateur radio station, the control point is where the person (the control operator) is sitting and making all the decisions about what to send out over the radio. It's not the antenna or the radio itself, but the spot where the operator is in charge!

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In the context of amateur radio, the control point is defined as the location where the control operator performs their duties. The control operator is responsible for ensuring that the station operates in compliance with the regulations set by the governing body (e.g., the FCC in the United States). This includes managing the transmission parameters, monitoring the frequency, and ensuring that the station does not cause interference.

The control point is not necessarily the same as the location of the transmitting antenna or the transmitting apparatus. While the antenna and the transmitting equipment are physical components of the station, the control point is where the human operator exercises control over the station's operations. This could be in a separate room or even at a remote location, depending on how the station is set up.

Understanding the concept of the control point is crucial for amateur radio operators, as it helps them comply with regulatory requirements and ensures that they are operating their stations responsibly.

#### 1.5.6 Technician Class Licensee and Amateur Extra Class Band

#### T1E06

When, under normal circumstances, may a Technician class licensee be the control operator of a station operating in an Amateur Extra Class band segment?

- A At no time
- B When designated as the control operator by an Amateur Extra Class licensee
- C As part of a multi-operator contest team
- D When using a club station whose trustee holds an Amateur Extra Class license

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a driver's license that only lets you drive a regular car, but your friend has a special license that allows them to drive a super-fast sports car. Even if your friend says it's okay, you still can't drive their sports car because you don't have the right license. Similarly, a Technician class licensee can't operate in the Amateur Extra Class band segment, no matter what. It's just not allowed!

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In amateur radio, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) assigns different frequency bands to different license classes based on their level of expertise and testing. The Technician class license grants access to certain frequency bands, but the Amateur Extra Class band segments are reserved for those who have passed the highest level of licensing exams.

The FCC regulations explicitly state that a Technician class licensee cannot operate in the Amateur Extra Class band segments under any normal circumstances. This is to ensure that only those with the appropriate knowledge and skills are using these more advanced frequency bands. Therefore, the correct answer is that a Technician class licensee may never be the control operator of a station operating in an Amateur Extra Class band segment.

# 1.5.7 Responsibility for Station Operation

#### T1E07

When the control operator is not the station licensee, who is responsible for the proper operation of the station?

- A All licensed amateurs who are present at the operation
- B Only the station licensee
- C Only the control operator
- D The control operator and the station licensee

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you and your friend are playing with a remote-controlled car. Your friend is the one holding the remote (the control operator), but the car actually belongs to you (the

station licensee). If something goes wrong, like the car crashes into a wall, both of you are responsible. Why? Because your friend was controlling it, but it's your car! So, both of you need to make sure everything is working properly. In the same way, when the control operator is not the station licensee, both of them are responsible for the proper operation of the station.

#### Advanced Explanation

In amateur radio operations, the station licensee is the person who owns the station and is responsible for its overall compliance with regulations. The control operator is the person who is actually operating the station at any given time. According to FCC rules, both the control operator and the station licensee share responsibility for ensuring that the station operates within legal limits. This dual responsibility ensures that both parties are accountable for the station's proper operation, even if the control operator is not the licensee. This is particularly important in maintaining the integrity and legality of amateur radio communications.

## 1.5.8 Example of Automatic Control

#### T1E08

Which of the following is an example of automatic control?

- A Repeater operation
- B Controlling a station over the internet
- C Using a computer or other device to send CW automatically
- D Using a computer or other device to identify automatically

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a robot friend who can do things for you without you having to tell it every single step. That's what automatic control is like! In this question, we're looking for something that works on its own, like a repeater. A repeater is like a helpful parrot that listens to your message and then repeats it louder and clearer so others can hear it. It does this all by itself, without anyone pushing buttons or giving commands. Cool, right?

#### Advanced Explanation

Automatic control refers to systems or devices that operate without continuous human intervention. In the context of radio technology, a repeater is a prime example of automatic control. A repeater receives a signal on one frequency, amplifies it, and retransmits it on another frequency, all without manual intervention. This process enhances communication range and clarity.

The other options involve some level of human control or setup:

• Controlling a station over the internet requires initial setup and ongoing commands.

- Using a computer or other device to send CW automatically involves pre-programming but still requires initiation.
- Using a computer or other device to identify automatically also involves pre-programming but is not fully autonomous.

Thus, the correct answer is **A: Repeater operation**, as it exemplifies a system that operates autonomously once set up.

### 1.5.9 Requirements for Remote Control Operation

#### T1E09

Which of the following are required for remote control operation?

- A The control operator must be at the control point
- B A control operator is required at all times
- C The control operator must indirectly manipulate the controls
- D All these choices are correct

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're playing a video game where you control a robot from your couch. To make sure the robot does what you want, you need to follow some rules. First, you don't have to be right next to the robot; you can control it from your couch. Second, you need to be paying attention the whole time the robot is moving. Lastly, you're not directly touching the robot; you're using a controller to tell it what to do. All these rules are important to make sure the robot doesn't go rogue!

#### **Advanced Explanation**

Remote control operation in radio technology involves several key requirements to ensure proper and safe operation. First, the control operator does not need to be physically present at the control point; they can operate the equipment from a remote location. Second, a control operator must be actively monitoring and managing the operation at all times to ensure compliance with regulations and safety standards. Third, the control operator must manipulate the controls indirectly, typically through a remote interface or control system. These requirements collectively ensure that remote control operations are conducted responsibly and effectively.

#### 1.5.10 Remote Control in Part 97

#### T1E10

Which of the following is an example of remote control as defined in Part 97?

- A Repeater operation
- B Operating the station over the internet
- C Controlling a model aircraft, boat, or car by amateur radio
- D All these choices are correct

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a super cool radio station, but you're not at home to play with it. No worries! You can still control it using the internet, just like how you can control your smart lights from your phone. This is called remote control. It's like having a magic wand that lets you operate your radio station from anywhere in the world, as long as you have an internet connection. So, the correct answer is operating the station over the internet. Easy peasy!

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In the context of Part 97 of the FCC rules, remote control refers to the operation of an amateur radio station from a location other than where the station is physically located. This is typically achieved through the use of internet-based control systems.

Repeater operation (Choice A) involves retransmitting signals to extend the range of communication, but it does not inherently involve remote control. Controlling a model aircraft, boat, or car by amateur radio (Choice C) is a form of remote control, but it is not the type of remote control defined in Part 97.

The correct answer is Choice B, operating the station over the internet, because it directly aligns with the definition of remote control as per Part 97. This method allows operators to control their stations from any location with internet access, providing flexibility and convenience.

### 1.5.11 Control Operator of an Amateur Station

#### T1E11

Who does the FCC presume to be the control operator of an amateur station, unless documentation to the contrary is in the station records?

- A The station custodian
- B The third party participant
- C The person operating the station equipment
- D The station licensee

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a cool treehouse, and you're the boss of it. Even if your friends come over and play in it, everyone knows it's YOUR treehouse. The FCC (the rule-makers for radio stuff) thinks the same way about amateur radio stations. Unless there's a note saying someone else is in charge, they assume the person who owns the station (the station licensee) is the one calling the shots. So, even if someone else is playing with the radio, the owner is still the boss!

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In the context of amateur radio operations, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) has specific regulations regarding the control operator of a station. The control operator is the person responsible for ensuring that the station operates in compliance with FCC rules. According to FCC regulations, the control operator is presumed to

be the station licensee unless there is documented evidence indicating otherwise. This presumption is in place to ensure accountability and proper operation of the station.

The station licensee is the individual or entity that holds the license for the amateur station. This license grants them the authority to operate the station and ensures they are knowledgeable about the rules and regulations governing amateur radio. Even if another individual is physically operating the equipment, the licensee remains the presumed control operator unless explicit documentation designates another person as the control operator.

This regulation underscores the importance of maintaining accurate station records and ensuring that all operators are aware of their responsibilities. It also highlights the licensee's ultimate responsibility for the station's compliance with FCC rules.

# 1.6 Topics on FCC Regulations and Amateur License

### 1.6.1 Station and Records Availability for FCC Inspection

#### T1F01

When must the station and its records be available for FCC inspection?

- A At any time ten days after notification by the FCC of such an inspection
- B At any time upon request by an FCC representative
- C At any time after written notification by the FCC of such inspection
- D Only when presented with a valid warrant by an FCC official or government agent

The correct answer is **B**. The station and its records must be available for inspection by the FCC at any time upon request by an FCC representative. This ensures compliance with FCC regulations and allows for immediate oversight.

# 1.6.2 Identification with FCC-Assigned Call Sign

#### T1F02

How often must you identify with your FCC-assigned call sign when using tactical call signs such as "Race Headquarters"?

- A Never, the tactical call is sufficient
- B Once during every hour
- C At the end of each communication and every ten minutes during a communication
- D At the end of every transmission

This question pertains to the FCC regulations regarding the use of call signs during communications. The correct answer emphasizes the importance of identifying your FCC-assigned call sign at specific intervals to ensure compliance with regulatory requirements.

## 1.6.3 Transmission of Assigned Call Sign

#### T1F03

When are you required to transmit your assigned call sign?

- A At the beginning of each contact, and every 10 minutes thereafter
- B At least once during each transmission
- C At least every 15 minutes during and at the end of a communication
- D At least every 10 minutes during and at the end of a communication

This question is straightforward and pertains to the regulations regarding the transmission of your assigned call sign. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{D}$ , which states that you must transmit your call sign at least every 10 minutes during and at the end of a communication. This ensures that your transmissions are properly identified according to regulatory requirements.

## 1.6.4 Language for Identification in Phone Sub-Band

#### T1F04

What language may you use for identification when operating in a phone sub-band?

- A Any language recognized by the United Nations
- B Any language recognized by the ITU
- C English
- D English, French, or Spanish

When operating in a phone sub-band, the language used for identification must be English. This ensures clear and standardized communication among operators from different linguistic backgrounds.

# 1.6.5 Call Sign Identification for Phone Signals

#### T1F05

What method of call sign identification is required for a station transmitting phone signals?

- A Send the call sign followed by the indicator RPT
- B Send the call sign using a CW or phone emission
- C Send the call sign followed by the indicator R
- D Send the call sign using only a phone emission

#### Explanation

When transmitting phone signals, a station must identify itself by sending its call sign. This can be done using either Continuous Wave (CW) or phone emission. The correct method is to send the call sign using a CW or phone emission, as specified in option B.

This ensures proper identification regardless of the emission type used for the transmission.

# 1.6.6 Acceptable Self-Assigned Indicators in Phone Transmission

#### T1F06

Which of the following self-assigned indicators are acceptable when using a phone transmission?

- A KL7CC stroke W3
- B KL7CC slant W3
- C KL7CC slash W3
- D All these choices are correct

#### Explanation

In amateur radio, self-assigned indicators such as stroke, slant, or slash are commonly used to denote specific conditions or affiliations. All the options provided (stroke, slant, slash) are acceptable forms of self-assigned indicators when using phone transmissions. Therefore, the correct answer is that all these choices are correct.

# 1.6.7 Restrictions for Non-Licensed Operators Speaking to Foreign Stations

#### T1F07

Which of the following restrictions apply when a non-licensed person is allowed to speak to a foreign station using a station under the control of a licensed amateur operator?

- A The person must be a U.S. citizen
- B The foreign station must be in a country with which the U.S. has a third party agreement
- C The licensed control operator must do the station identification
- D All these choices are correct

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're at a party, and you want to talk to someone from another country. However, there's a rule: you can only chat if your country has a special agreement with theirs. Similarly, in amateur radio, a non-licensed person can talk to a foreign station only if the U.S. has a third-party agreement with that country. This ensures that communication follows international rules and regulations.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In amateur radio, third-party agreements are formal arrangements between countries that allow amateur radio operators to communicate with stations in other countries, even if one of the parties is not licensed. These agreements are crucial for maintaining international communication standards and ensuring that all transmissions comply with the regulations of both countries involved. When a non-licensed person is allowed to speak to a foreign station, the key restriction is that the foreign station must be in a country with which the U.S. has a third-party agreement. This ensures that the communication is legally permissible and adheres to international amateur radio protocols. The licensed control operator is responsible for ensuring that all transmissions, including station identification, comply with the rules. However, the specific requirement for the foreign station to be in a country with a third-party agreement is the primary restriction in this scenario.

## 1.6.8 Definition of Third Party Communications

#### T1F08

What is the definition of third party communications?

- A A message from a control operator to another amateur station control operator on behalf of another person
- B Amateur radio communications where three stations are in communications with one another
- C Operation when the transmitting equipment is licensed to a person other than the control operator
- D Temporary authorization for an unlicensed person to transmit on the amateur bands for technical experiments

Third party communications in amateur radio refer to the scenario where a licensed control operator sends a message on behalf of another person to another amateur station. This is a common practice and is allowed under specific regulations to facilitate communication for non-licensed individuals through licensed operators.

# 1.6.9 Types of Amateur Stations

#### T1F09

What type of amateur station simultaneously retransmits the signal of another amateur station on a different channel or channels?

- A Beacon station
- B Earth station
- C Repeater station
- D Message forwarding station

#### **Explanation**

A repeater station is designed to receive a signal on one frequency and simultaneously retransmit it on another frequency. This allows for extended communication range by

overcoming obstacles like terrain or distance. The other options do not perform this specific function.

## 1.6.10 Accountability for Repeater Violations

#### T1F10

Who is accountable if a repeater inadvertently retransmits communications that violate the FCC rules?

- A The control operator of the originating station
- B The control operator of the repeater
- C The owner of the repeater
- D Both the originating station and the repeater owner

#### **Explanation**

In the context of FCC regulations, the control operator of the originating station is responsible for ensuring that all communications comply with the rules. If a repeater retransmits a communication that violates these rules, the accountability lies with the control operator of the station that originated the communication, not the repeater or its owner. This is because the repeater is merely retransmitting the signal it receives, and the responsibility for the content of that signal rests with the originating station.

## 1.6.11 Requirements for Club Station License Grant

#### T1F11

Which of the following is a requirement for the issuance of a club station license grant?

- A The trustee must have an Amateur Extra Class operator license grant
- B The club must have at least four members
- C The club must be registered with the American Radio Relay League
- D All these choices are correct

To obtain a club station license grant, the club must meet specific requirements. One of these requirements is that the club must have at least four members. This ensures that the club has a sufficient number of participants to operate the station effectively. The other options, such as the trustee having an Amateur Extra Class license or the club being registered with the American Radio Relay League, are not mandatory for the issuance of a club station license grant.

# Chapter 2 OPERATING PROCEDURES

# 2.1 Repeater and Communication Basics

### 2.1.1 Common Repeater Frequency Offset in the 2 Meter Band

#### T2A01

What is a common repeater frequency offset in the 2 meter band?

- 1. Plus or minus 5 MHz
- 2. Plus or minus 600 kHz
- 3. Plus or minus 500 kHz
- 4. Plus or minus 1 MHz

In the 2 meter band, repeaters typically use a frequency offset to separate the transmit and receive frequencies. This offset helps prevent interference and allows for simultaneous transmission and reception. The most common offset in this band is **plus or minus 600 kHz**. This means that if a repeater is receiving on a certain frequency, it will transmit on a frequency that is 600 kHz higher or lower than the receive frequency.

# 2.1.2 National Calling Frequency for FM Simplex Operations

#### T2A02

What is the national calling frequency for FM simplex operations in the 2 meter band?

- 1. 146.520 MHz
- 2. 145.000 MHz
- 3. 432.100 MHz
- 4. 446.000 MHz

The national calling frequency for FM simplex operations in the 2 meter band is **146.520 MHz**. This frequency is widely recognized and used by amateur radio operators for initiating communication in the 2 meter band.

### 2.1.3 Common Repeater Frequency Offset in the 70 cm Band

#### T2A03

What is a common repeater frequency offset in the 70 cm band?

- 1. Plus or minus 5 MHz
- 2. Plus or minus 600 kHz
- 3. Plus or minus 500 kHz
- 4. Plus or minus 1 MHz

In the 70 cm band, which is part of the UHF spectrum, repeaters often use a frequency offset to separate the transmit and receive frequencies. This offset helps to avoid interference and allows for simultaneous transmission and reception. The most common offset in this band is **plus or minus 5 MHz**. This means that if a repeater is receiving on a certain frequency, it will transmit on a frequency that is 5 MHz higher or lower than the receive frequency.

## 2.1.4 Calling Another Station on a Repeater

#### T2A04

What is an appropriate way to call another station on a repeater if you know the other station's call sign?

- 1. Say break, break, then say the station's call sign
- 2. Say the station's call sign, then identify with your call sign
- 3. Say CQ three times, then the other station's call sign
- 4. Wait for the station to call CQ, then answer

When calling another station on a repeater, it is important to follow proper protocol. The correct method is to first say the other station's call sign, followed by your own call sign. This ensures clarity and proper identification.

# 2.1.5 Responding to a Station Calling CQ

#### T2A05

How should you respond to a station calling CQ?

- 1. Transmit CQ followed by the other station's call sign
- 2. Transmit your call sign followed by the other station's call sign
- 3. Transmit the other station's call sign followed by your call sign
- 4. Transmit a signal report followed by your call sign

When a station calls CQ, it is essentially asking if anyone is listening and wants to communicate. The proper way to respond is to first acknowledge the station by transmitting their call sign, followed by your own call sign. This ensures clarity and avoids confusion in the communication.

#### 2.1.6 On-the-Air Test Transmissions

#### T2A06

Which of the following is required when making on-the-air test transmissions?

- 1. Identify the transmitting station
- 2. Conduct tests only between 10 p.m. and 6 a.m. local time
- 3. Notify the FCC of the transmissions
- 4. All these choices are correct

#### **Explanation**

When making on-the-air test transmissions, it is essential to identify the transmitting station. This ensures that other operators are aware of the source of the transmission and can avoid confusion. The other options, such as conducting tests only during specific hours or notifying the FCC, are not required for on-the-air test transmissions.

## 2.1.7 Repeater Offset

#### T2A07

What is meant by repeater offset"?

- 1. The difference between a repeater's transmit and receive frequencies
- 2. The repeater has a time delay to prevent interference
- 3. The repeater station identification is done on a separate frequency
- 4. The number of simultaneous transmit frequencies used by a repeater

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're at a party, and you want to talk to someone across the room, but it's too noisy. So, you ask a friend in the middle to relay your message. Now, your friend can't talk and listen at the same time, so they switch between listening to you and then repeating your message to the other person. This switching between listening and talking is like the repeater offset in radio communication. It's the difference between the frequency the repeater listens on and the frequency it transmits on.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In radio communication, a repeater is a device that receives a signal on one frequency and retransmits it on another frequency. The repeater offset is the difference between these two frequencies. This offset is necessary to prevent the repeater from interfering with its own reception. For example, if a repeater receives a signal on 146.94 MHz, it might retransmit that signal on 146.34 MHz, resulting in an offset of 600 kHz. This ensures that the repeater can receive and transmit simultaneously without causing interference. The specific offset value depends on the band and the region's regulatory requirements.

## 2.1.8 Meaning of the Procedural Signal "CQ"

#### T2A08

What is the meaning of the procedural signal "CQ"?

- 1. Call on the quarter hour
- 2. Test transmission, no reply expected
- 3. Only the called station should transmit
- 4. Calling any station

The procedural signal "CQ" is commonly used in amateur radio to indicate a general call to any station that may be listening. It is not specific to any particular station and is used to initiate contact with any operator who is available to respond. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{D}$ , which means "Calling any station."

## 2.1.9 Identifying a Station Listening on a Repeater

#### T2A09

Which of the following indicates that a station is listening on a repeater and looking for a contact?

- 1. "CQ CQ" followed by the repeater's call sign
- 2. The station's call sign followed by the word "monitoring"
- 3. The repeater call sign followed by the station's call sign
- 4. "QSY" followed by your call sign

When a station is listening on a repeater and looking for a contact, they typically announce their call sign followed by the word monitoring. This indicates that they are actively listening and available for communication. The other options either refer to calling for a general contact (CQ) or changing frequency (QSY), which are not relevant to this specific scenario.

# 2.1.10 Band Plan Beyond FCC Privileges

#### T2A10

What is a band plan, beyond the privileges established by the FCC?

- 1. A voluntary guideline for using different modes or activities within an amateur band
- 2. A list of operating schedules
- 3. A list of available net frequencies
- 4. A plan devised by a club to indicate frequency band usage

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of a band plan as a set of gentleman's agreements among amateur radio operators. While the FCC sets the rules for what frequencies you can use, the band plan helps

everyone play nicely together by suggesting which parts of the band are best for certain activities, like voice communication, digital modes, or Morse code. It's like having a playground where everyone agrees to use different areas for different games.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

A band plan is a detailed guideline that organizes the use of the amateur radio spectrum beyond the basic regulatory framework provided by the FCC. It is developed by the amateur radio community to optimize the use of available frequencies and minimize interference between different modes of communication. For example, within a specific band, certain segments might be designated for voice communication (SSB, FM), while others are reserved for digital modes (PSK31, FT8) or CW (Morse code). These plans are not legally binding but are widely adopted to ensure efficient and harmonious use of the spectrum.

# 2.1.11 Amateur Station Transmission and Reception on Same Frequency

#### T2A11

What term describes an amateur station that is transmitting and receiving on the same frequency?

- 1. Full duplex
- 2. Diplex
- 3. Simplex
- 4. Multiplex

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're talking on a walkie-talkie. When you press the button to talk, you can't hear the other person, and when you release the button to listen, you can't talk. This is because both talking and listening happen on the same frequency. This is called **simplex** communication. It's like a one-lane road where traffic can only go one way at a time.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In radio communication, **simplex** refers to a mode where transmission and reception occur on the same frequency, but not simultaneously. This is different from **full duplex**, where transmission and reception can happen at the same time on different frequencies, and **half duplex**, where transmission and reception can alternate on the same frequency but not simultaneously. Simplex is commonly used in amateur radio for its simplicity and efficiency in certain scenarios, such as direct communication between two stations without the need for complex frequency management.

## 2.1.12 Pre-Calling CQ Protocol

#### T2A12

What should you do before calling CQ?

- 1. Listen first to be sure that no one else is using the frequency
- 2. Ask if the frequency is in use
- 3. Make sure you are authorized to use that frequency
- 4. All these choices are correct

Before calling CQ, it is essential to ensure that the frequency is clear, that you are authorized to use it, and that no one else is already using it. This practice helps maintain order and prevents interference with ongoing communications.

# 2.2 Radio Operating Essentials

## 2.2.1 Using a VHF/UHF Transceiver's Reverse Function

#### T2B01

How is a VHF/UHF transceiver's "reverse" function used?

- 1. To reduce power output
- 2. To increase power output
- 3. To listen on a repeater's input frequency
- 4. To listen on a repeater's output frequency

#### **Explanation**

The reverse function on a VHF/UHF transceiver is used to switch the listening frequency from the repeater's output frequency to its input frequency. This allows the operator to hear the signals being transmitted directly to the repeater, rather than the signals being retransmitted by the repeater. This can be useful for monitoring the quality of the signal being sent to the repeater or for troubleshooting communication issues.

# 2.2.2 Sub-audible Tone for Squelch Control

#### T2B02

What term describes the use of a sub-audible tone transmitted along with normal voice audio to open the squelch of a receiver?

- 1. Carrier squelch
- 2. Tone burst
- 3. DTMF
- 4. CTCSS

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're at a party where everyone is talking at the same time. You only want to hear your friend, so you both agree to whisper a secret word before speaking. This way, you only listen when you hear the secret word. CTCSS works similarly in radios. It uses a low-frequency tone (like a secret word) to tell the receiver when to open the squelch and let the audio through.

#### Advanced Explanation

CTCSS (Continuous Tone-Coded Squelch System) is a method used in radio communications to control the squelch of a receiver. The transmitter sends a sub-audible tone (typically between 67 Hz and 254.1 Hz) along with the voice signal. The receiver is set to only open the squelch when it detects this specific tone. This allows multiple users to share the same frequency without hearing each other's transmissions, as long as they use different CTCSS tones. This system is particularly useful in repeater operations and in environments with high levels of interference.

## 2.2.3 Linked Repeater Network Description

#### T2B03

Which of the following describes a linked repeater network?

- 1. A network of repeaters in which signals received by one repeater are transmitted by all the repeaters in the network
- 2. A single repeater with more than one receiver
- 3. Multiple repeaters with the same control operator
- 4. A system of repeaters linked by APRS

A linked repeater network is a system where multiple repeaters are interconnected. When one repeater receives a signal, it is retransmitted by all the other repeaters in the network, ensuring wide coverage and consistent communication across a large area. This setup is particularly useful in regions where a single repeater cannot cover the entire area effectively.

# 2.2.4 Accessing a Repeater

#### T2B04

Which of the following could be the reason you are unable to access a repeater whose output you can hear?

- 1. Improper transceiver offset
- 2. You are using the wrong CTCSS tone
- 3. You are using the wrong DCS code
- 4. All these choices are correct

#### **Explanation**

If you can hear the repeater's output but cannot access it, the issue could be due to an improper transceiver offset, an incorrect CTCSS tone, or an incorrect DCS code. All these factors are essential for proper communication with a repeater, and any one of them being incorrect can prevent access. Therefore, the correct answer is that all these choices are correct.

#### 2.2.5 Distortion in FM Transmission Audio

#### T2B05

What would cause your FM transmission audio to be distorted on voice peaks?

- 1. Your repeater offset is inverted
- 2. You need to talk louder
- 3. You are talking too loudly
- 4. Your transmit power is too high

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're shouting into a microphone. If you shout too loudly, the microphone can't handle the volume, and the sound gets all garbled. Similarly, in FM (Frequency Modulation) transmission, if you speak too loudly into the microphone, the audio signal can get distorted, especially during the loudest parts (peaks) of your speech. This is because the FM system has a limit to how much it can handle before it starts to distort the sound.

#### Advanced Explanation

In FM transmission, the audio signal modulates the frequency of the carrier wave. The modulation index, which is the ratio of the frequency deviation to the modulating frequency, plays a crucial role in determining the quality of the transmitted signal. When the audio signal is too strong (i.e., you are talking too loudly), it causes excessive frequency deviation. This can lead to overmodulation, where the signal exceeds the maximum allowable deviation, resulting in distortion. The distortion is most noticeable during voice peaks because that's when the signal is at its strongest. Therefore, speaking too loudly into the microphone is the primary cause of audio distortion in FM transmission.

# 2.2.6 Signaling with Audio Tone Pairs

#### T2B06

What type of signaling uses pairs of audio tones?

- 1. **DTMF**
- 2. CTCSS
- 3. GPRS
- 4. D-STAR

#### **Explanation**

DTMF (Dual-Tone Multi-Frequency) signaling uses pairs of audio tones to represent different digits or commands. This method is commonly used in telephone systems for dialing numbers and in some radio systems for remote control operations. Each key press generates a unique combination of two tones, one from a low-frequency group and one from a high-frequency group. This allows for reliable and distinct signaling even over noisy channels.

## 2.2.7 Joining a Digital Repeater's Talkgroup

#### T2B07

How can you join a digital repeater's "talkgroup"?

- 1. Register your radio with the local FCC office
- 2. Join the repeater owner's club
- 3. Program your radio with the group's ID or code
- 4. Sign your call after the courtesy tone

To join a digital repeater's talkgroup, you need to program your radio with the group's ID or code. This allows your radio to communicate with the repeater and participate in the specific talkgroup. The other options are not relevant to joining a talkgroup on a digital repeater.

# 2.2.8 Interference on the Same Frequency

#### T2B08

Which of the following applies when two stations transmitting on the same frequency interfere with each other?

- 1. The stations should negotiate continued use of the frequency
- 2. Both stations should choose another frequency to avoid conflict
- 3. Interference is inevitable, so no action is required
- 4. Use subaudible tones so both stations can share the frequency

When two stations transmit on the same frequency and cause interference, the appropriate action is for the stations to negotiate the continued use of the frequency. This ensures that both parties can communicate effectively without causing further disruption.

## 2.2.9 Simplex Channels in VHF/UHF Band Plans

#### T2B09

Why are simplex channels designated in the VHF/UHF band plans?

- 1. So stations within range of each other can communicate without tying up a repeater
- 2. For contest operation
- 3. For working DX only
- 4. So stations with simple transmitters can access the repeater without automated offset

Simplex channels in the VHF/UHF band plans are designated to allow direct communication between stations within range of each other, without the need for a repeater. This helps to reduce the load on repeaters and ensures efficient use of the available spectrum.

## 2.2.10 Q Signal for Interference

#### T2B10

Which Q signal indicates that you are receiving interference from other stations?

- 1. **QRM**
- 2. QRN
- 3. QTH
- 4. QSB

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to listen to your favorite radio station, but someone else is talking loudly on the same frequency. That annoying noise is what we call interference. In the world of radio communication, we use special codes called Q signals to quickly describe common situations. The Q signal **QRM** is like saying, Hey, I'm hearing interference from other stations!

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In radio communication, Q signals are standardized codes used to convey common messages efficiently. The Q signal **QRM** specifically refers to interference caused by other radio transmissions. This can occur when multiple stations are operating on the same or nearby frequencies, leading to overlapping signals. Understanding Q signals is crucial for clear and concise communication, especially in situations where brevity is essential, such as in amateur radio operations or emergency communications.

## 2.2.11 Q Signal for Changing Frequency

#### T2B11

Which Q signal indicates that you are changing frequency?

- 1. QRU
- 2. **QSY**
- 3. QSL
- 4. QRZ

The Q signal **QSY** is used to indicate that you are changing frequency. This is a standard communication protocol in radio operations to inform others of a frequency shift.

## 2.2.12 Color Code in DMR Repeater Systems

#### T2B12

What is the purpose of the color code used on DMR repeater systems?

- 1. Must match the repeater color code for access
- 2. Defines the frequency pair to use
- 3. Identifies the codec used
- 4. Defines the minimum signal level required for access

The color code in DMR (Digital Mobile Radio) repeater systems is a simple yet essential feature. It ensures that only radios with the correct color code can communicate through the repeater. This helps in preventing interference from other nearby DMR systems operating on the same frequency. The correct answer is **A**, as the color code must match the repeater's color code for access.

# 2.2.13 Purpose of a Squelch Function

#### T2B13

What is the purpose of a squelch function?

- 1. Reduce a CW transmitter's key clicks
- 2. Mute the receiver audio when a signal is not present
- 3. Eliminate parasitic oscillations in an RF amplifier
- 4. Reduce interference from impulse noise

The squelch function is used to mute the audio output of a receiver when no signal is present. This prevents the listener from hearing constant background noise or static, making the listening experience more pleasant. When a signal is detected, the squelch opens, allowing the audio to be heard.

# 2.3 Operational Basics

## 2.3.1 FCC Rules and Amateur Station Operation

#### T2C01

When do FCC rules NOT apply to the operation of an amateur station?

- 1. When operating a RACES station
- 2. When operating under special FEMA rules
- 3. When operating under special ARES rules
- 4. FCC rules always apply

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of the FCC (Federal Communications Commission) as the traffic police for radio waves. Just like how traffic rules apply to all vehicles on the road, FCC rules apply to all amateur radio stations. No matter what special club or emergency group you're part of, the FCC's rules are always in effect. So, there's no off-duty time for these rules when you're operating an amateur station.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

The FCC regulates all radio communications in the United States, including amateur radio stations. This regulation ensures that radio frequencies are used efficiently and without causing harmful interference. Whether you're operating under the Radio Amateur Civil Emergency Service (RACES), Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) rules, or Amateur Radio Emergency Service (ARES) rules, the FCC's overarching regulations still apply. This is because these special services operate within the broader framework of amateur radio, which is governed by the FCC. Therefore, the correct answer is that FCC rules always apply.

# 2.3.2 Typical Duties of a Net Control Station

#### T2C02

Which of the following are typical duties of a Net Control Station?

- 1. Choose the regular net meeting time and frequency
- 2. Ensure that all stations checking into the net are properly licensed for operation on the net frequency
- 3. Call the net to order and direct communications between stations checking in
- 4. All these choices are correct

The primary duty of a Net Control Station is to manage the flow of communications during a net. This includes calling the net to order and directing communications between stations checking in. While other tasks like choosing the meeting time and frequency or ensuring proper licensing are important, they are not the main responsibilities of the Net Control Station. Therefore, the correct answer is  $\mathbf{C}$ .

### 2.3.3 Ensuring Correct Reception of Unusual Words

#### T2C03

What technique is used to ensure that voice messages containing unusual words are received correctly?

- 1. Send the words by voice and Morse code
- 2. Speak very loudly into the microphone
- 3. Spell the words using a standard phonetic alphabet
- 4. All these choices are correct

To ensure that voice messages containing unusual words are received correctly, the most effective technique is to spell the words using a standard phonetic alphabet. This method minimizes misunderstandings and ensures clarity in communication.

#### 2.3.4 RACES Overview

#### T2C04

What is RACES?

- 1. An emergency organization combining amateur radio and citizens band operators and frequencies
- 2. An international radio experimentation society
- 3. A radio contest held in a short period, sometimes called a "sprint"
- 4. An FCC part 97 amateur radio service for civil defense communications during national emergencies

RACES, or the Radio Amateur Civil Emergency Service, is a part of the FCC's amateur radio service specifically designated for civil defense communications during national emergencies. It allows licensed amateur radio operators to assist in emergency communications when needed.

# 2.3.5 Understanding Traffic in Net Operation

#### T2C05

What does the term "traffic" refer to in net operation?

- 1. Messages exchanged by net stations
- 2. The number of stations checking in and out of a net
- 3. Operation by mobile or portable stations
- 4. Requests to activate the net by a served agency

In the context of net operation, the term traffic refers to the messages that are exchanged between the stations participating in the net. This is the primary focus of communication during net operations, ensuring that information is shared efficiently and accurately among all involved parties.

## 2.3.6 Amateur Radio Emergency Service (ARES)

#### T2C06

What is the Amateur Radio Emergency Service (ARES)?

- 1. A group of licensed amateurs who have voluntarily registered their qualifications and equipment for communications duty in the public service
- 2. A group of licensed amateurs who are members of the military and who voluntarily agreed to provide message handling services in the case of an emergency
- 3. A training program that provides licensing courses for those interested in obtaining an amateur license to use during emergencies
- 4. A training program that certifies amateur operators for membership in the Radio Amateur Civil Emergency Service

The Amateur Radio Emergency Service (ARES) is a volunteer organization of licensed amateur radio operators who are prepared to provide emergency communication services to the public. This group is essential during disasters when regular communication channels may be disrupted. The correct answer is  $\bf A$ .

#### 2.3.7 Standard Practices in a Net

#### T2C07

Which of the following is standard practice when you participate in a net?

- 1. When first responding to the net control station, transmit your call sign, name, and address as in the FCC database
- 2. Record the time of each of your transmissions
- 3. Unless you are reporting an emergency, transmit only when directed by the net control station
- 4. All these choices are correct

When participating in a net, it is essential to follow the instructions of the net control station to maintain order and efficiency. Transmitting only when directed, unless reporting an emergency, ensures smooth communication and prevents unnecessary interruptions.

# 2.3.8 Characteristics of Good Traffic Handling

#### T2C08

Which of the following is a characteristic of good traffic handling?

- 1. Passing messages exactly as received
- 2. Making decisions as to whether messages are worthy of relay or delivery
- 3. Ensuring that any newsworthy messages are relayed to the news media
- 4. All these choices are correct

Good traffic handling in radio communication involves ensuring that messages are transmitted accurately and without alteration. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{A}$ , as it emphasizes the importance of passing messages exactly as received, which is a fundamental principle in maintaining the integrity and reliability of communication.

## 2.3.9 Frequency Privileges and Emergency Operations

#### T2C09

Are amateur station control operators ever permitted to operate outside the frequency privileges of their license class?

- 1. No
- 2. Yes, but only when part of a FEMA emergency plan
- 3. Yes, but only when part of a RACES emergency plan
- 4. Yes, but only in situations involving the immediate safety of human life or protection of property

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're a superhero with a special radio license. Normally, you have to stick to certain frequencies, like staying in your own lane on the highway. But what if there's a big emergency, like a fire or a flood, and you need to save lives or protect property? In those rare, urgent situations, you're allowed to break the rules and use any frequency to help out. It's like being given a temporary superhero pass to do what's necessary in a crisis.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

Amateur radio operators are generally required to operate within the frequency bands allocated to their license class. However, there are exceptions in emergency situations where immediate action is necessary to ensure the safety of human life or to protect property. This exception is outlined in the FCC rules, which allow operators to use any frequency, even those outside their licensed privileges, when such urgent circumstances arise. This provision ensures that amateur radio can be a reliable tool in critical situations, providing communication when other systems may fail.

# 2.3.10 Preamble of a Formal Traffic Message

#### T2C10

What information is contained in the preamble of a formal traffic message?

- 1. The email address of the originating station
- 2. The address of the intended recipient
- 3. The telephone number of the addressee
- 4. Information needed to track the message

The preamble of a formal traffic message contains essential information required to track the message. This ensures that the message can be properly monitored and managed throughout its transmission. The other options, such as email addresses or telephone numbers, are not typically included in the preamble.

## 2.3.11 Understanding the Check in a Radiogram Header

#### T2C11

What is meant by "check" in a radiogram header?

- 1. The number of words or word equivalents in the text portion of the message
- 2. The call sign of the originating station
- 3. A list of stations that have relayed the message
- 4. A box on the message form that indicates that the message was received and/or relayed

The term check in a radiogram header refers to the number of words or word equivalents in the text portion of the message. This is used to ensure that the message has been transmitted accurately and completely.

# Chapter 3 RADIO WAVE PROPA-GATION

# 3.1 Signal Variability and Challenges

## 3.1.1 VHF Signal Strength Variations

#### T3A01

Why do VHF signal strengths sometimes vary greatly when the antenna is moved only a few feet?

- 1. The signal path encounters different concentrations of water vapor
- 2. VHF ionospheric propagation is very sensitive to path length
- 3. Multipath propagation cancels or reinforces signals
- 4. All these choices are correct

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're in a room with two speakers playing the same song. If you move just a few feet, the sound might get louder or softer because the sound waves from the two speakers are either adding together or canceling each other out. Similarly, VHF signals can bounce off objects like buildings or hills, creating multiple paths to your antenna. Moving the antenna even a little can change how these waves combine, making the signal stronger or weaker.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

VHF signals typically propagate via line-of-sight, but they can also reflect off surfaces such as buildings, terrain, or other obstacles. This creates multiple paths for the signal to reach the antenna, a phenomenon known as multipath propagation. When these reflected signals arrive at the antenna, they can interfere with the direct signal. Depending on the phase difference between the signals, they can either constructively interfere (reinforcing the signal) or destructively interfere (canceling the signal). Moving the antenna even a small distance can significantly alter the phase relationship between the signals, leading to noticeable variations in signal strength. This is why VHF signal strengths can vary greatly with small changes in antenna position.

### 3.1.2 Effect of Vegetation on UHF and Microwave Signals

#### T3A02

What is the effect of vegetation on UHF and microwave signals?

- 1. Knife-edge diffraction
- 2. Absorption
- 3. Amplification
- 4. Polarization rotation

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to shout through a dense forest. The trees and leaves absorb some of your sound, making it harder for someone on the other side to hear you. Similarly, vegetation absorbs UHF and microwave signals, reducing their strength as they pass through.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

Vegetation, especially when dense and moist, can absorb radio waves in the UHF and microwave frequency ranges. This absorption occurs because the water content in the vegetation interacts with the electromagnetic waves, converting some of the wave energy into heat. This effect is more pronounced at higher frequencies, such as those in the UHF and microwave bands, because these wavelengths are closer in size to the water molecules and plant structures, leading to more efficient energy transfer and absorption.

# 3.1.3 Antenna Polarization for VHF/UHF Long-Distance Contacts

#### T3A03

What antenna polarization is normally used for long-distance CW and SSB contacts on the VHF and UHF bands?

- 1. Right-hand circular
- 2. Left-hand circular
- 3. Horizontal
- 4. Vertical

#### Intuitive Explanation

Imagine you're trying to throw a frisbee as far as possible. You'd probably throw it horizontally, right? Similarly, for long-distance communication on VHF and UHF bands, horizontal polarization is like throwing that frisbee—it helps the signal travel farther.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

Horizontal polarization is preferred for long-distance VHF and UHF communications because it reduces ground wave attenuation and minimizes interference from vertically polarized signals, which are more common in local communications. This polarization aligns the electric field of the radio wave parallel to the Earth's surface, which is more efficient for long-distance propagation, especially when using directional antennas like Yagis or dipoles.

## 3.1.4 Polarization Mismatch in VHF/UHF Links

#### T3A04

What happens when antennas at opposite ends of a VHF or UHF line of sight radio link are not using the same polarization?

- 1. The modulation sidebands might become inverted
- 2. Received signal strength is reduced
- 3. Signals have an echo effect
- 4. Nothing significant will happen

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to catch a frisbee. If you hold your hands horizontally, but your friend throws the frisbee vertically, you're going to have a hard time catching it. Similarly, if the antennas at both ends of a radio link are not aligned in the same polarization (horizontal, vertical, etc.), the signal strength will be weaker because the antennas aren't catching the signal as effectively.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

Polarization refers to the orientation of the electric field of the radio wave. For optimal signal transmission and reception, the transmitting and receiving antennas should have the same polarization. When the polarizations are mismatched, the received signal strength is reduced due to polarization loss. The amount of loss depends on the angle between the polarizations of the transmitting and receiving antennas. For example, if one antenna is vertically polarized and the other is horizontally polarized, the signal loss can be significant, often reducing the received signal strength by more than 20 dB. This is why it's crucial to ensure that antennas in a VHF or UHF line of sight link are aligned in the same polarization.

# 3.1.5 Communicating with a Distant Repeater Using a Directional Antenna

#### T3A05

When using a directional antenna, how might your station be able to communicate with a distant repeater if buildings or obstructions are blocking the direct line of sight path?

- 1. Change from vertical to horizontal polarization
- 2. Try to find a path that reflects signals to the repeater
- 3. Try the long path
- 4. Increase the antenna SWR

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to throw a ball to a friend, but there's a big wall in the way. You can't throw the ball straight to them, so what do you do? You might try bouncing the ball off the ground or a nearby wall to get it to your friend. Similarly, when buildings or obstructions block the direct path to a repeater, you can try to bounce your radio signals off other surfaces to reach it. This is called signal reflection.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In radio communication, line of sight (LOS) is often the most direct and efficient path for signal transmission. However, when obstacles like buildings or terrain block the LOS, signals can be reflected off other surfaces to reach the intended receiver. This phenomenon is known as multipath propagation. By using a directional antenna, you can aim the signal towards a reflective surface, such as a building or a hill, which can then redirect the signal towards the repeater. This method leverages the principles of wave reflection and can be an effective way to overcome obstructions in the communication path.

# 3.1.6 Picket Fencing in Radio Communications

#### T3A06

What is the meaning of the term "picket fencing"?

- 1. Alternating transmissions during a net operation
- 2. Rapid flutter on mobile signals due to multipath propagation
- 3. A type of ground system used with vertical antennas
- 4. Local vs long-distance communications

The term picket fencing refers to the rapid flutter or distortion experienced in mobile radio signals due to multipath propagation. This phenomenon occurs when radio waves reflect off various surfaces, such as buildings or terrain, causing multiple signal paths to arrive at the receiver at slightly different times. The result is a signal that fluctuates rapidly, resembling the appearance of a picket fence. This is a common issue in mobile communications, especially in urban environments with many reflective surfaces.

## 3.1.7 Weather Impact on Microwave Range

#### T3A07

What weather condition might decrease range at microwave frequencies?

- 1. High winds
- 2. Low barometric pressure
- 3. Precipitation
- 4. Colder temperatures

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to shout across a field. If it starts raining heavily, your voice won't carry as far because the rain absorbs and scatters the sound waves. Similarly, at microwave frequencies, precipitation like rain or snow can absorb and scatter the radio waves, reducing their range.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

Microwave frequencies are particularly susceptible to attenuation caused by precipitation. When radio waves encounter rain, snow, or other forms of precipitation, the water droplets or ice particles absorb and scatter the energy of the waves. This phenomenon is known as rain fade and is a significant factor in the degradation of signal strength over distance. The higher the frequency, the more pronounced this effect becomes. Therefore, precipitation is the weather condition most likely to decrease the range at microwave frequencies.

## 3.1.8 Ionospheric Signal Fading

#### T3A08

What is a likely cause of irregular fading of signals propagated by the ionosphere?

- 1. Frequency shift due to Faraday rotation
- 2. Interference from thunderstorms
- 3. Intermodulation distortion
- 4. Random combining of signals arriving via different paths

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're at a concert, and the sound from the speakers reaches your ears directly, but also bounces off the walls and ceiling before reaching you. Sometimes, these different sound waves combine in a way that makes the music louder, and sometimes they cancel each other out, making it quieter. Similarly, radio signals can take different paths through the ionosphere, and when they reach your receiver, they might combine in random ways, causing the signal to fade irregularly.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

The ionosphere is a layer of the Earth's atmosphere that is ionized by solar radiation. It can reflect radio signals back to Earth, allowing for long-distance communication. However, the ionosphere is not a uniform layer; it has varying densities and heights, which can cause radio signals to take multiple paths to reach the receiver. This phenomenon is known as multipath propagation. When these signals arrive at the receiver, they can interfere with each other constructively or destructively, leading to irregular fading. This is known as multipath fading or selective fading. The random combining of these signals is the primary cause of the irregular fading observed in ionospheric propagation.

### 3.1.9 Effects of Elliptical Polarization in Ionospheric Signals

#### T3A09

Which of the following results from the fact that signals propagated by the ionosphere are elliptically polarized?

- 1. Digital modes are unusable
- 2. Either vertically or horizontally polarized antennas may be used for transmission or reception
- 3. FM voice is unusable
- 4. Both the transmitting and receiving antennas must be of the same polarization

#### Explanation

When signals propagate through the ionosphere, they often become elliptically polarized. This means that the electric field of the signal rotates as it travels, creating an elliptical pattern. As a result, the polarization of the signal at the receiving end can vary. This allows for flexibility in the choice of antennas: either vertically or horizontally polarized antennas can be used for transmission or reception, as the elliptical polarization ensures that the signal can be received regardless of the antenna's orientation. This is why option B is correct.

# 3.1.10 Effects of Multi-Path Propagation on Data Transmissions

#### T3A10

What effect does multi-path propagation have on data transmissions?

- 1. Transmission rates must be increased by a factor equal to the number of separate paths observed
- 2. Transmission rates must be decreased by a factor equal to the number of separate paths observed
- 3. No significant changes will occur if the signals are transmitted using FM
- 4. Error rates are likely to increase

Multi-path propagation occurs when a signal travels from the transmitter to the receiver via multiple paths due to reflections, diffractions, and scattering. This can cause the signal to arrive at the receiver at different times, leading to interference and distortion. As a result, the error rates in data transmissions are likely to increase, making option D the correct answer.

# 3.1.11 Atmospheric Region for HF and VHF Radio Wave Refraction

#### T3A11

Which region of the atmosphere can refract or bend HF and VHF radio waves?

- 1. The stratosphere
- 2. The troposphere
- 3. The ionosphere
- 4. The mesosphere

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine the atmosphere as a layered cake. Each layer has its own special properties. When it comes to bending or refracting HF (High Frequency) and VHF (Very High Frequency) radio waves, the ionosphere is the superstar. It's like a giant mirror in the sky that bounces these radio waves back to Earth, allowing them to travel long distances.

#### Advanced Explanation

The ionosphere is a region of the Earth's atmosphere that is ionized by solar and cosmic radiation. It extends from about 60 km to 1,000 km above the Earth's surface. The ionosphere contains charged particles (ions and free electrons) that can refract radio waves. HF and VHF radio waves interact with these charged particles, causing the waves to bend and return to the Earth's surface. This phenomenon is crucial for long-distance radio communication, especially for HF bands, which can be reflected multiple times between the ionosphere and the Earth's surface to cover vast distances.

## 3.1.12 Effect of Fog and Rain on 10m and 6m Bands

#### T3A12

What is the effect of fog and rain on signals in the 10 meter and 6 meter bands?

- 1. Absorption
- 2. There is little effect
- 3. Deflection
- 4. Range increase

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to talk to someone through a foggy or rainy day. If you're close enough, the fog or rain doesn't really stop your voice from reaching them. Similarly, signals in the 10 meter and 6 meter bands are like your voice in this scenario—they aren't significantly affected by fog or rain.

#### Advanced Explanation

The 10 meter (28-29.7 MHz) and 6 meter (50-54 MHz) bands are part of the Very High Frequency (VHF) spectrum. At these frequencies, the wavelength is relatively long, and the interaction with atmospheric particles like fog and rain is minimal. Unlike higher frequency bands (e.g., microwave bands), where absorption and scattering by water droplets can be significant, VHF signals pass through fog and rain with little attenuation. This is why fog and rain have little effect on signals in these bands.

# 3.2 Electromagnetic Essentials

# 3.2.1 Relationship Between Electric and Magnetic Fields in an Electromagnetic Wave

#### T3B01

What is the relationship between the electric and magnetic fields of an electromagnetic wave?

- 1. They travel at different speeds
- 2. They are in parallel
- 3. They revolve in opposite directions
- 4. They are at right angles

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're holding a jump rope and shaking it up and down. The up-and-down motion creates waves that travel along the rope. Now, think of the electric field as the up-and-down motion and the magnetic field as a side-to-side motion. In an electromagnetic wave, these two motions are perpendicular to each other, just like the up-and-down and side-to-side motions of the jump rope. This means the electric and magnetic fields are at right angles to each other.

#### Advanced Explanation

In an electromagnetic wave, the electric field (**E**) and the magnetic field (**B**) are perpendicular to each other and to the direction of wave propagation. This is a fundamental property of electromagnetic waves, as described by Maxwell's equations. The electric field generates the magnetic field, and vice versa, creating a self-sustaining wave that propagates through space. The relationship between these fields is such that they oscillate in phase but are oriented at 90 degrees to each other, ensuring the wave's energy is conserved and propagated efficiently.

#### 3.2.2 Polarization of Radio Waves

#### T3B02

What property of a radio wave defines its polarization?

- 1. The orientation of the electric field
- 2. The orientation of the magnetic field
- 3. The ratio of the energy in the magnetic field to the energy in the electric field
- 4. The ratio of the velocity to the wavelength

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine a radio wave as a wiggling rope. The way the rope wiggles up and down or side to side is similar to how the electric field of a radio wave oscillates. The direction of this wiggle is what we call the polarization of the wave. So, if the electric field is moving up and down, the wave is vertically polarized. If it's moving side to side, it's horizontally polarized.

#### Advanced Explanation

Polarization refers to the orientation of the electric field vector of an electromagnetic wave as it propagates through space. In a radio wave, the electric field and magnetic field are perpendicular to each other and to the direction of propagation. The polarization is determined by the direction of the electric field vector. For example, if the electric field oscillates in a vertical plane, the wave is said to be vertically polarized. Conversely, if it oscillates in a horizontal plane, the wave is horizontally polarized. The magnetic field, while always perpendicular to the electric field, does not define the polarization. The other options, such as the ratio of energies or the ratio of velocity to wavelength, are not related to the concept of polarization.

# 3.2.3 Components of a Radio Wave

#### T3B03

What are the two components of a radio wave?

- 1. Impedance and reactance
- 2. Voltage and current
- 3. Electric and magnetic fields
- 4. Ionizing and non-ionizing radiation

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine a radio wave as a wave in the ocean. Just like the wave has both height and movement, a radio wave has two main parts: an electric field and a magnetic field. These fields work together to carry the wave through space, much like how the height and movement of an ocean wave work together to move water.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

A radio wave is an electromagnetic wave, which means it consists of oscillating electric and magnetic fields that are perpendicular to each other and to the direction of wave propagation. The electric field  $(\mathbf{E})$  and the magnetic field  $(\mathbf{B})$  are interdependent; a changing electric field generates a magnetic field, and a changing magnetic field generates an electric field. This mutual generation allows the wave to propagate through space without the need for a medium. The relationship between these fields is described by Maxwell's equations, which form the foundation of classical electromagnetism.

## 3.2.4 Velocity of a Radio Wave in Free Space

#### T3B04

What is the velocity of a radio wave traveling through free space?

- 1. Speed of light
- 2. Speed of sound
- 3. Speed inversely proportional to its wavelength
- 4. Speed that increases as the frequency increases

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're sending a message using a flashlight in a completely empty space. The light from the flashlight travels at the fastest speed possible in the universe, which is the speed of light. Similarly, radio waves, which are a type of electromagnetic wave, also travel at this speed when they move through free space. So, the velocity of a radio wave in free space is the same as the speed of light.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

Radio waves are a form of electromagnetic radiation, and like all electromagnetic waves, they travel through free space at the speed of light, denoted by c. The speed of light in a vacuum is approximately  $3 \times 10^8$  meters per second. This speed is a fundamental constant of nature and is the same for all electromagnetic waves, regardless of their frequency or wavelength. The relationship between the speed of light (c), frequency (f), and wavelength  $(\lambda)$  is given by the equation:

$$c = f\lambda$$

This equation shows that the speed of light is constant, and any changes in frequency or wavelength are inversely proportional to each other. Therefore, the velocity of a radio wave in free space is always the speed of light.

# 3.2.5 Wavelength and Frequency Relationship

## T3B05

What is the relationship between wavelength and frequency?

- 1. Wavelength gets longer as frequency increases
- 2. Wavelength gets shorter as frequency increases
- 3. Wavelength and frequency are unrelated
- 4. Wavelength and frequency increase as path length increases

# **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're at a concert, and the band is playing a song. The faster they play (higher frequency), the closer together the waves of sound are (shorter wavelength). Conversely, if they slow down (lower frequency), the waves spread out more (longer wavelength). So, wavelength and frequency are like dance partners—when one moves faster, the other gets closer.

# **Advanced Explanation**

The relationship between wavelength  $(\lambda)$  and frequency (f) is governed by the equation:

$$v = \lambda \cdot f$$

where v is the velocity of the wave. For electromagnetic waves in a vacuum, v is the speed of light (c), which is a constant. Therefore, as frequency increases, wavelength must decrease to keep the product  $\lambda \cdot f$  equal to c. This inverse relationship is fundamental in understanding wave behavior in various media.

# 3.2.6 Converting Frequency to Wavelength

## T3B06

What is the formula for converting frequency to approximate wavelength in meters?

- 1. Wavelength in meters equals frequency in hertz multiplied by 300
- 2. Wavelength in meters equals frequency in hertz divided by 300
- 3. Wavelength in meters equals frequency in megahertz divided by 300
- 4. Wavelength in meters equals 300 divided by frequency in megahertz

To convert frequency to wavelength, the formula is straightforward. The wavelength ( $\lambda$ ) in meters is approximately equal to 300 divided by the frequency (f) in megahertz (MHz). This is because the speed of light is approximately  $3 \times 10^8$  meters per second, and frequency in MHz is  $10^6$  hertz. Therefore, the formula simplifies to  $\lambda = \frac{300}{f}$ .

# 3.2.7 Identifying Amateur Radio Bands

# T3B07

In addition to frequency, which of the following is used to identify amateur radio bands?

- 1. The approximate wavelength in meters
- 2. Traditional letter/number designators
- 3. Channel numbers
- 4. All these choices are correct

Amateur radio bands are often identified by their approximate wavelength in meters, in addition to their frequency. This is a common practice in the amateur radio community to simplify communication about different bands.

# 3.2.8 VHF Frequency Range

## T3B08

What frequency range is referred to as VHF?

- 1. 30 kHz to 300 kHz
- 2. **30** MHz to **300** MHz
- 3. 300 kHz to 3000 kHz
- 4. 300 MHz to 3000 MHz

The VHF (Very High Frequency) range is commonly used for FM radio broadcasting, television, and two-way land mobile radio systems. The correct frequency range for VHF is  $30~\rm MHz$  to  $300~\rm MHz$ .

# 3.2.9 UHF Frequency Range

## T3B09

What frequency range is referred to as UHF?

- 1. 30 to 300 kHz
- 2. 30 to 300 MHz
- 3. 300 to 3000 kHz
- 4. **300 to 3000 MHz**

The Ultra High Frequency (UHF) range is defined as the frequency range from 300 to 3000 MHz. This range is commonly used for television broadcasting, mobile phones, and other communication systems.

# 3.2.10 Frequency Range of HF

## T3B10

What frequency range is referred to as HF?

- 1. 300 to 3000 MHz
- 2. 30 to 300 MHz
- 3. **3** to **30** MHz
- 4. 300 to 3000 kHz

The High Frequency (HF) range is commonly used for long-distance communication, including international broadcasting and amateur radio. The correct frequency range for HF is 3 to 30 MHz.

# 3.2.11 Velocity of a Radio Wave in Free Space

## T3B11

What is the approximate velocity of a radio wave in free space?

- 1. 150,000 meters per second
- 2. 300,000,000 meters per second
- 3. 300,000,000 miles per hour
- 4. 150,000 miles per hour

# **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're sending a message using a flashlight in a completely empty, dark room. The light travels at a constant speed, and in the same way, radio waves travel at a constant speed in free space. This speed is incredibly fast—about 300 million meters per second! That's why when you turn on your radio, the music starts almost instantly, even if the station is far away.

# **Advanced Explanation**

The velocity of a radio wave in free space is a fundamental constant in physics, often denoted by the symbol c. This speed is the same as the speed of light in a vacuum, which is approximately  $3 \times 10^8$  meters per second. This value is derived from Maxwell's equations, which describe how electric and magnetic fields propagate through space. The speed of radio waves is not affected by the medium of free space, as there is no material to slow them down. This is why radio waves can travel vast distances in space without losing their speed.

# 3.3 Propagation Basics

# 3.3.1 Simplex UHF Signals and Radio Horizon

# T3C01

Why are simplex UHF signals rarely heard beyond their radio horizon?

- 1. They are too weak to go very far
- 2. FCC regulations prohibit them from going more than 50 miles
- 3. UHF signals are usually not propagated by the ionosphere
- 4. UHF signals are absorbed by the ionospheric D region

# Intuitive Explanation

Imagine UHF signals as a flashlight beam. If you shine it straight ahead, it doesn't bend around corners or over hills. Similarly, UHF signals travel in a straight line and don't bounce off the ionosphere like some other radio waves. This means they can't reach beyond the horizon.

# **Advanced Explanation**

UHF (Ultra High Frequency) signals operate in the frequency range of 300 MHz to 3 GHz. These frequencies are generally too high to be refracted by the ionosphere, which is a layer of the Earth's atmosphere that can reflect lower frequency radio waves. Instead, UHF signals propagate primarily by line-of-sight, meaning they travel in a straight path from the transmitter to the receiver. This limits their range to the radio horizon, which is the distance at which the Earth's curvature blocks the direct path of the signal. Therefore, UHF signals are rarely heard beyond their radio horizon because they do not benefit from ionospheric propagation.

# 3.3.2 HF Communication Characteristics

## T3C02

What is a characteristic of HF communication compared with communications on VHF and higher frequencies?

- 1. HF antennas are generally smaller
- 2. HF accommodates wider bandwidth signals
- 3. Long-distance ionospheric propagation is far more common on HF
- 4. There is less atmospheric interference (static) on HF

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of HF (High Frequency) communication like a boomerang. When you throw it, it can travel far and even bounce back to you. HF signals can bounce off the ionosphere, a layer of the Earth's atmosphere, allowing them to travel long distances. On the other

hand, VHF (Very High Frequency) and higher frequencies are like a straight arrow—they go in a straight line and don't bounce back, so they are better for shorter distances.

# **Advanced Explanation**

HF communication operates in the frequency range of 3 to 30 MHz. One of the key characteristics of HF is its ability to utilize ionospheric propagation. The ionosphere, which is ionized by solar radiation, can reflect HF signals back to Earth, enabling long-distance communication. This is particularly useful for global communication, especially in remote areas where other forms of communication may not be feasible. In contrast, VHF (30-300 MHz) and higher frequencies typically propagate in a line-of-sight manner, limiting their range to the visual horizon unless relayed by satellites or repeaters. Therefore, long-distance ionospheric propagation is far more common on HF compared to VHF and higher frequencies.

# 3.3.3 Characteristics of VHF Signals via Auroral Backscatter

#### T3C03

What is a characteristic of VHF signals received via auroral backscatter?

- 1. They are often received from 10,000 miles or more
- 2. They are distorted and signal strength varies considerably
- 3. They occur only during winter nighttime hours
- 4. They are generally strongest when your antenna is aimed west

# Intuitive Explanation

Imagine the aurora as a giant, shimmering curtain in the sky. When VHF signals hit this curtain, they bounce back, but not in a neat, orderly way. Instead, the signals get all jumbled up, like a reflection in a funhouse mirror. This means the signals you receive can be distorted, and their strength can go up and down unpredictably.

#### Advanced Explanation

Auroral backscatter occurs when VHF signals are reflected by the ionized regions of the atmosphere associated with auroras. These ionized regions are highly dynamic and irregular, causing the reflected signals to be distorted. The signal strength can vary considerably due to the changing density and movement of the ionized particles. This phenomenon is most commonly observed during periods of high solar activity when auroras are more pronounced. The distortion and variability in signal strength are key characteristics of VHF signals received via auroral backscatter.

# 3.3.4 Propagation Types Beyond the Radio Horizon

## T3C04

Which of the following types of propagation is most commonly associated with occasional strong signals on the 10, 6, and 2 meter bands from beyond the radio horizon?

- 1. Backscatter
- 2. Sporadic E
- 3. D region absorption
- 4. Gray-line propagation

# **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine the ionosphere as a giant mirror in the sky that sometimes gets a bit wobbly. When it wobbles just right, it can bounce radio signals from far away back down to Earth, even if they're beyond the normal radio horizon. This is called Sporadic E propagation, and it's like catching a surprise signal from a distant station on your radio.

# **Advanced Explanation**

Sporadic E (Es) propagation occurs due to the formation of highly ionized patches in the E layer of the ionosphere, typically at altitudes of 90-120 km. These patches can reflect higher frequency signals (such as those on the 10, 6, and 2 meter bands) back to Earth, allowing for communication beyond the normal line-of-sight range. This phenomenon is sporadic and unpredictable, often resulting in strong, short-lived signals from distant stations. Other propagation types like backscatter, D region absorption, and gray-line propagation do not typically produce the same strong, occasional signals on these bands.

# 3.3.5 Radio Signal Propagation Beyond Obstructions

## T3C05

Which of the following effects may allow radio signals to travel beyond obstructions between the transmitting and receiving stations?

- 1. Knife-edge diffraction
- 2. Faraday rotation
- 3. Quantum tunneling
- 4. Doppler shift

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to throw a ball over a tall fence. If you throw it straight at the fence, it will hit the fence and bounce back. But if you throw it at an angle, the ball might just skim the top of the fence and land on the other side. Knife-edge diffraction is like that angled throw—it allows radio signals to bend around the edges of obstacles, like mountains or buildings, and reach the other side.

# **Advanced Explanation**

Knife-edge diffraction is a phenomenon where radio waves bend around the sharp edges of obstacles, such as hills or buildings, allowing the signal to propagate beyond the line of sight. This effect is particularly useful in radio communication when there are obstructions between the transmitting and receiving stations. The amount of diffraction depends on the wavelength of the signal and the size and shape of the obstacle. In contrast, Faraday rotation, quantum tunneling, and Doppler shift are not typically associated with overcoming physical obstructions in radio signal propagation.

# 3.3.6 Tropospheric Ducting in VHF and UHF Communications

# T3C06

What type of propagation is responsible for allowing over-the-horizon VHF and UHF communications to ranges of approximately 300 miles on a regular basis?

- 1. Tropospheric ducting
- 2. D region refraction
- 3. F2 region refraction
- 4. Faraday rotation

# **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine the Earth's atmosphere as a giant, invisible pipe. Sometimes, this pipe can trap radio waves and guide them over long distances, even beyond the horizon. This phenomenon is called tropospheric ducting. It's like a secret tunnel for radio signals, allowing them to travel much farther than they normally would. This is especially useful for VHF and UHF communications, which usually have a limited range.

# Advanced Explanation

Tropospheric ducting occurs when there is a temperature inversion in the troposphere, the lowest layer of the Earth's atmosphere. This inversion creates a boundary layer that can trap radio waves, particularly in the VHF and UHF bands. The trapped waves are then guided along this layer, allowing them to propagate over distances much greater than the line-of-sight range. This effect is most common in regions with stable weather conditions and can facilitate communications over approximately 300 miles. Other propagation mechanisms, such as D region refraction, F2 region refraction, and Faraday rotation, do not typically support such long-range VHF and UHF communications on a regular basis.

# 3.3.7 Meteor Scatter Communication Band

#### T3C07

What band is best suited for communicating via meteor scatter?

- 1. 33 centimeters
- 2. 6 meters
- 3. 2 meters
- 4. 70 centimeters

# **Intuitive Explanation**

Meteor scatter communication is like using the trails left by shooting stars as mirrors to bounce radio signals. The 6-meter band is particularly good for this because it strikes a balance between being able to reflect off the ionized trails and not being absorbed too much by the atmosphere. Think of it as the Goldilocks band—not too long, not too short, but just right for meteor scatter.

# Advanced Explanation

Meteor scatter communication relies on the ionization trails left by meteors entering the Earth's atmosphere. These trails can reflect radio waves, allowing for communication over long distances. The 6-meter band (50-54 MHz) is ideal for this purpose because it has a wavelength that is long enough to be effectively reflected by the ionized trails but short enough to minimize atmospheric absorption and noise. Additionally, the 6-meter band is less crowded compared to higher frequency bands, reducing interference and improving the chances of successful communication.

# 3.3.8 Tropospheric Ducting Causes

### T3C08

What causes tropospheric ducting?

- 1. Discharges of lightning during electrical storms
- 2. Sunspots and solar flares
- 3. Updrafts from hurricanes and tornadoes
- 4. Temperature inversions in the atmosphere

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine the atmosphere as a giant sandwich. Normally, the temperature decreases as you go higher, like a sandwich with the top layer being cooler. But sometimes, a layer of warm air gets trapped above a layer of cooler air, like a warm slice of bread on top of a cool one. This weird sandwich can act like a tunnel, bending radio waves and making them travel much farther than usual. This phenomenon is called tropospheric ducting.

# **Advanced Explanation**

Tropospheric ducting occurs due to temperature inversions in the atmosphere. Normally, temperature decreases with altitude in the troposphere. However, during a temperature inversion, a layer of warm air is trapped above a layer of cooler air. This inversion layer can act as a waveguide, bending radio waves and allowing them to propagate over long distances. This effect is particularly noticeable in the VHF and UHF bands, where signals can travel hundreds of kilometers beyond the normal line-of-sight range. The inversion layer effectively ducts the radio waves, hence the term tropospheric ducting.

# 3.3.9 Optimal Time for 10 Meter Band Propagation via F Region

## T3C09

What is generally the best time for long-distance 10 meter band propagation via the F region?

- 1. From dawn to shortly after sunset during periods of high sunspot activity
- 2. From shortly after sunset to dawn during periods of high sunspot activity
- 3. From dawn to shortly after sunset during periods of low sunspot activity
- 4. From shortly after sunset to dawn during periods of low sunspot activity

The F region of the ionosphere is most effective for long-distance radio propagation during daylight hours when solar radiation ionizes the atmosphere. High sunspot activity increases ionization, enhancing propagation conditions. Therefore, the best time for 10 meter band propagation via the F region is from dawn to shortly after sunset during periods of high sunspot activity.

# 3.3.10 Ionospheric Communication Bands

# T3C10

Which of the following bands may provide long-distance communications via the ionosphere's F region during the peak of the sunspot cycle?

- 1. **6** and **10** meters
- 2. 23 centimeters
- 3. 70 centimeters and 1.25 meters
- 4. All these choices are correct

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine the ionosphere as a giant mirror in the sky that bounces radio waves back to Earth. During the peak of the sunspot cycle, this mirror becomes especially good at reflecting certain radio frequencies. The 6 and 10 meter bands are like the perfect size of waves that this mirror loves to reflect, making them ideal for long-distance communication.

# **Advanced Explanation**

The ionosphere's F region, particularly the F2 layer, is crucial for long-distance HF (High Frequency) communication. During the peak of the sunspot cycle, increased solar radiation ionizes the F region more intensely, enhancing its ability to refract HF signals. The 6 and 10 meter bands (approximately 50 MHz and 30 MHz, respectively) fall within the HF range and are significantly affected by this ionization. Higher frequency bands like 23 centimeters (1.3 GHz), 70 centimeters (430 MHz), and 1.25 meters (220 MHz) are in the VHF/UHF range and are less likely to be refracted by the ionosphere, making them unsuitable for long-distance communication via the F region. Therefore, the correct answer is the 6 and 10 meter bands.

# 3.3.11 Radio Horizon for VHF and UHF Signals

## T3C11

Why is the radio horizon for VHF and UHF signals more distant than the visual horizon?

- 1. Radio signals move somewhat faster than the speed of light
- 2. Radio waves are not blocked by dust particles
- 3. The atmosphere refracts radio waves slightly
- 4. Radio waves are blocked by dust particles

# **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're standing on a beach, looking out at the horizon. You can only see so far because the Earth curves away from you. Now, think of radio waves as a ball you're throwing. If you throw it straight, it will eventually hit the ground. But if you throw it at just the right angle, it can skip over the surface of the water and go further. The atmosphere acts like a gentle slope that helps the radio waves skip further than your eyes can see.

# Advanced Explanation

The Earth's atmosphere has a refractive index that decreases with altitude. This causes radio waves to bend slightly as they travel through the atmosphere, a phenomenon known as atmospheric refraction. For VHF (Very High Frequency) and UHF (Ultra High Frequency) signals, this bending effect extends the radio horizon beyond the visual horizon. The curvature of the Earth limits the visual horizon, but the refraction of radio waves allows them to follow the Earth's curvature more closely, effectively increasing the distance they can travel before being obstructed by the Earth's surface. This is why VHF and UHF signals can be received at greater distances than what the visual horizon would suggest.

# Chapter 4 AMATEUR RADIO PRAC-TICES

# 4.1 Critical Connections and Equipment

# 4.1.1 Power Supply Rating for FM Transceiver

## T4A01

Which of the following is an appropriate power supply rating for a typical 50 watt output mobile FM transceiver?

- 1. 24.0 volts at 4 amperes
- 2. 13.8 volts at 4 amperes
- 3. 24.0 volts at 12 amperes
- 4. **13.8** volts at **12** amperes

Most mobile FM transceivers operate at a standard voltage of 13.8 volts, which is common in automotive electrical systems. To achieve a 50-watt output, the power supply must provide sufficient current. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{D}$ , as 13.8 volts at 12 amperes provides the necessary power (13.8 V  $\times$  12 A = 165.6 W), which is more than enough to support the transceiver's operation, accounting for efficiency losses.

# 4.1.2 Considerations for Selecting an SWR Meter

#### T4A02

Which of the following should be considered when selecting an accessory SWR meter?

- 1. The frequency and power level at which the measurements will be made
- 2. The distance that the meter will be located from the antenna
- 3. The types of modulation being used at the station
- 4. All these choices are correct

When selecting an SWR meter, it is crucial to ensure that it is compatible with the frequency and power levels at which you intend to make measurements. This ensures accurate readings and prevents damage to the meter. The other options, such as the distance from the antenna or the types of modulation, are not relevant factors in selecting

an SWR meter.

# 4.1.3 DC Power Connection Wires for Transceivers

## T4A03

Why are short, heavy-gauge wires used for a transceiver's DC power connection?

- 1. To minimize voltage drop when transmitting
- 2. To provide a good counterpoise for the antenna
- 3. To avoid RF interference
- 4. All these choices are correct

#### Explanation

Short, heavy-gauge wires are used for a transceiver's DC power connection primarily to minimize voltage drop when transmitting. Thicker wires (heavy-gauge) have lower resistance, which reduces the voltage drop across the wire when high current is drawn during transmission. Shorter wires further reduce resistance and voltage drop, ensuring that the transceiver receives adequate power for optimal performance.

## 4.1.4 FT8 Transceiver Audio Connections

# T4A04

How are the transceiver audio input and output connected in a station configured to operate using FT8?

- 1. To a computer running a terminal program and connected to a terminal node controller unit
- 2. To the audio input and output of a computer running WSJT-X software
- 3. To an FT8 conversion unit, a keyboard, and a computer monitor
- 4. To a computer connected to the FT8converter.com website

# Explanation

In a station configured to operate using FT8, the transceiver's audio input and output are connected directly to the audio input and output of a computer running WSJT-X software. This setup allows the computer to process the digital signals used in FT8 communication, which is a popular mode for weak signal communication in amateur radio. The WSJT-X software handles the encoding and decoding of the FT8 signals, making it the central component in this configuration.

# 4.1.5 Installation of an RF Power Meter

# T4A05

Where should an RF power meter be installed?

- 1. In the feed line, between the transmitter and antenna
- 2. At the power supply output
- 3. In parallel with the push-to-talk line and the antenna
- 4. In the power supply cable, as close as possible to the radio

# Explanation

An RF power meter is used to measure the power output of a transmitter. To accurately measure the RF power being sent to the antenna, the meter should be installed in the feed line, between the transmitter and the antenna. This placement ensures that the meter reads the actual power being transmitted, rather than power at other points in the system.

# 4.1.6 Computer-Radio Interface Signals for Digital Mode Operation

## T4A06

What signals are used in a computer-radio interface for digital mode operation?

- 1. Receive and transmit mode, status, and location
- 2. Antenna and RF power
- 3. Receive audio, transmit audio, and transmitter keying
- 4. NMEA GPS location and DC power

#### Explanation

In digital mode operation, the computer-radio interface primarily handles audio signals and control signals. The receive audio signal carries the incoming digital data from the radio to the computer, while the transmit audio signal sends the outgoing digital data from the computer to the radio. The transmitter keying signal is used to control when the radio should transmit the data. These three signals are essential for effective digital communication between the computer and the radio.

# 4.1.7 Computer and Transceiver Connection for Digital Modes

# T4A07

Which of the following connections is made between a computer and a transceiver to use computer software when operating digital modes?

- 1. Computer "line out" to transceiver push-to-talk
- 2. Computer "line in" to transceiver push-to-talk
- 3. Computer "line in" to transceiver speaker connector
- 4. Computer "line out" to transceiver speaker connector

To operate digital modes using computer software, the computer needs to receive audio signals from the transceiver. This is typically done by connecting the computer's "line in" to the transceiver's speaker connector. This allows the computer to process the audio signals for digital communication.

# 4.1.8 Preferred Conductor for RF Bonding

## T4A08

Which of the following conductors is preferred for bonding at RF?

- 1. Copper braid removed from coaxial cable
- 2. Steel wire
- 3. Twisted-pair cable
- 4. Flat copper strap

#### Intuitive Explanation

When dealing with RF (Radio Frequency) bonding, you want a conductor that can handle high frequencies efficiently. Think of it like choosing the right hose for watering your garden. A flat, wide hose (like a flat copper strap) will allow water (or in this case, RF signals) to flow smoothly without any kinks or resistance. On the other hand, a twisted hose (like twisted-pair cable) or a rusty hose (like steel wire) would cause problems. Copper braid might seem like a good option, but it's not as effective as a flat copper strap for RF bonding.

#### Advanced Explanation

In RF systems, bonding conductors are used to ensure a low-impedance path for RF currents. The choice of conductor is critical to minimize losses and avoid interference. A flat copper strap is preferred because it provides a large surface area, which reduces skin effect—a phenomenon where RF currents tend to flow on the surface of the conductor. This large surface area also helps in reducing inductance, which is crucial for maintaining a low impedance at high frequencies. Copper braid, while conductive, does not offer the same surface area and can introduce additional inductance. Steel wire is not ideal due to its higher resistance and lower conductivity compared to copper. Twisted-pair cable is designed for differential signaling and is not suitable for RF bonding. Therefore, the flat copper strap is the best choice for effective RF bonding.

# 4.1.9 Battery Power Duration Calculation

## T4A09

How can you determine the length of time that equipment can be powered from a battery?

- 1. Divide the watt-hour rating of the battery by the peak power consumption of the equipment
- 2. Divide the battery ampere-hour rating by the average current draw of the equipment
- 3. Multiply the watts per hour consumed by the equipment by the battery power rating
- 4. Multiply the square of the current rating of the battery by the input resistance of the equipment

# **Intuitive Explanation**

To figure out how long a battery will last, think of it like a water tank. The ampere-hour (Ah) rating of the battery is like the size of the tank, and the average current draw of your equipment is like the rate at which water is being used. To find out how long the water will last, you simply divide the size of the tank by the rate of water usage. Similarly, to find out how long the battery will last, you divide the ampere-hour rating by the average current draw.

# **Advanced Explanation**

The ampere-hour (Ah) rating of a battery indicates the total charge it can deliver over time. For example, a 10 Ah battery can deliver 10 amperes for 1 hour, or 1 ampere for 10 hours. The average current draw of the equipment is the steady current it consumes during operation. To determine the duration the battery can power the equipment, you use the formula:

$$Duration (hours) = \frac{Battery Ah Rating}{Average Current Draw (A)}$$

This formula assumes that the battery is fully charged and that the current draw remains constant. Variations in current draw or battery efficiency can affect the actual duration.

# 4.1.10 Function of a Transceiver and Digital Mode Hot Spot

## T4A10

What function is performed with a transceiver and a digital mode hot spot?

- 1. Communication using digital voice or data systems via the internet
- 2. FT8 digital communications via AFSK
- 3. RTTY encoding and decoding without a computer
- 4. High-speed digital communications for meteor scatter

A transceiver combined with a digital mode hot spot allows for communication using digital voice or data systems via the internet. This setup is commonly used in amateur radio to facilitate digital modes of communication, such as DMR, D-STAR, or Fusion, which rely on internet connectivity for linking and data transmission.

# 4.1.11 Negative Power Return Connection in a Vehicle

## T4A11

Where should the negative power return of a mobile transceiver be connected in a vehicle?

- 1. At the 12 volt battery chassis ground
- 2. At the antenna mount
- 3. To any metal part of the vehicle
- 4. Through the transceiver's mounting bracket

# Explanation

The negative power return of a mobile transceiver should be connected directly to the 12-volt battery chassis ground. This ensures a stable and low-resistance connection, which is crucial for proper operation and safety. Connecting it to other parts of the vehicle, such as the antenna mount or any metal part, can lead to poor grounding and potential interference issues. The mounting bracket is also not a suitable location for the negative power return as it may not provide a reliable ground connection.

# 4.1.12 Electronic Keyer

# T4A12

What is an electronic keyer?

- 1. A device for switching antennas from transmit to receive
- 2. A device for voice activated switching from receive to transmit
- 3. A device that assists in manual sending of Morse code
- 4. An interlock to prevent unauthorized use of a radio

An electronic keyer is a device used by amateur radio operators to assist in the manual sending of Morse code. It helps in generating consistent and accurate Morse code signals, making it easier for operators to communicate effectively.

# 4.2 Sound Waves Simplified

# 4.2.1 Effect of Excessive Microphone Gain on SSB Transmissions

## T4B01

What is the effect of excessive microphone gain on SSB transmissions?

- 1. Frequency instability
- 2. Distorted transmitted audio
- 3. Increased SWR
- 4. All these choices are correct

# **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of your microphone gain like the volume knob on a stereo. If you turn it up too high, the sound gets distorted and unpleasant to listen to. Similarly, in SSB (Single Sideband) transmissions, if the microphone gain is set too high, the audio signal becomes distorted, making it harder for the receiver to understand the transmission.

# Advanced Explanation

In SSB transmissions, the microphone gain controls the amplitude of the audio signal that modulates the carrier wave. Excessive gain can cause the audio signal to exceed the linear range of the modulator, leading to clipping and distortion. This distortion manifests as a garbled or unintelligible audio signal at the receiver's end. Unlike frequency instability or increased SWR, which are not directly caused by microphone gain, distorted audio is a direct consequence of overdriving the microphone input. Therefore, the correct answer is **B: Distorted transmitted audio**.

# 4.2.2 Entering a Transceiver's Operating Frequency

## T4B02

Which of the following can be used to enter a transceiver's operating frequency?

- 1. The keypad or VFO knob
- 2. The CTCSS or DTMF encoder
- 3. The Automatic Frequency Control
- 4. All these choices are correct

To set the operating frequency on a transceiver, you typically use the keypad or the Variable Frequency Oscillator (VFO) knob. These are the standard methods for manually entering or adjusting the frequency. The other options, such as CTCSS or DTMF encoders and Automatic Frequency Control, are not used for this purpose.

# 4.2.3 Adjusting Squelch for Weak FM Signals

## T4B03

How is squelch adjusted so that a weak FM signal can be heard?

- 1. Set the squelch threshold so that receiver output audio is on all the time
- 2. Turn up the audio level until it overcomes the squelch threshold
- 3. Turn on the anti-squelch function
- 4. Enable squelch enhancement

To hear a weak FM signal, the squelch threshold should be set so that the receiver's output audio is always on. This ensures that even weak signals are not muted by the squelch circuit.

# 4.2.4 Quick Access to Favorite Frequency on Transceiver

## T4B04

What is a way to enable quick access to a favorite frequency or channel on your transceiver?

- 1. Enable the frequency offset
- 2. Store it in a memory channel
- 3. Enable the VOX
- 4. Use the scan mode to select the desired frequency

To quickly access a favorite frequency or channel on your transceiver, the most efficient method is to store it in a memory channel. This allows you to recall the frequency instantly without manually tuning it each time. The other options, such as enabling the frequency offset, VOX, or using scan mode, do not provide the same level of convenience for accessing a specific frequency.

# 4.2.5 Scanning Function of an FM Transceiver

## T4B05

What does the scanning function of an FM transceiver do?

- 1. Checks incoming signal deviation
- 2. Prevents interference to nearby repeaters
- 3. Tunes through a range of frequencies to check for activity
- 4. Checks for messages left on a digital bulletin board

The scanning function of an FM transceiver is designed to automatically tune through a range of frequencies to check for any activity. This is particularly useful for monitoring multiple channels or frequencies without manually adjusting the transceiver. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{C}$ .

# 4.2.6 Adjusting Voice Pitch in Single-Sideband Signals

# T4B06

Which of the following controls could be used if the voice pitch of a single-sideband signal returning to your CQ call seems too high or low?

- 1. The AGC or limiter
- 2. The bandwidth selection
- 3. The tone squelch
- 4. The RIT or Clarifier

# Explanation

When receiving a single-sideband (SSB) signal, the voice pitch may appear too high or low due to a slight frequency mismatch between the transmitter and receiver. The RIT (Receiver Incremental Tuning) or Clarifier is specifically designed to fine-tune the receiver's frequency to match the incoming signal, thereby correcting the voice pitch. The other options (AGC, bandwidth selection, and tone squelch) do not directly affect the frequency tuning and thus are not suitable for this purpose.

# 4.2.7 DMR Code Plug Content

## T4B07

What does a DMR "code plug" contain?

- 1. Your call sign in CW for automatic identification
- 2. Access information for repeaters and talkgroups
- 3. The codec for digitizing audio
- 4. The DMR software version

## Explanation

A DMR (Digital Mobile Radio) code plug is essentially a configuration file used to program a DMR radio. It contains all the necessary settings and information required for the radio to operate correctly. This includes access information for repeaters and talkgroups, which allows the radio to connect to specific networks and communicate with other users. The correct answer is  $\bf B$ , as the code plug primarily contains access information for repeaters and talkgroups, not CW call signs, codecs, or software versions.

# 4.2.8 Advantages of Multiple Receive Bandwidth Choices

# T4B08

What is the advantage of having multiple receive bandwidth choices on a multimode transceiver?

- 1. Permits monitoring several modes at once by selecting a separate filter for each mode
- 2. Permits noise or interference reduction by selecting a bandwidth matching the mode
- 3. Increases the number of frequencies that can be stored in memory
- 4. Increases the amount of offset between receive and transmit frequencies

# **Explanation**

Having multiple receive bandwidth choices on a multimode transceiver allows the user to select a bandwidth that matches the mode being used. This helps in reducing noise or interference, as a narrower bandwidth can filter out unwanted signals more effectively. This is particularly useful in environments with high levels of interference or noise.

# 4.2.9 Selecting a Group of Stations on a Digital Voice Transceiver

## T4B09

How is a specific group of stations selected on a digital voice transceiver?

- 1. By retrieving the frequencies from transceiver memory
- 2. By enabling the group's CTCSS tone
- 3. By entering the group's identification code
- 4. By activating automatic identification

#### Explanation

On a digital voice transceiver, selecting a specific group of stations is typically done by entering the group's identification code. This code allows the transceiver to connect to the correct group of stations within the digital network. The other options, such as retrieving frequencies or enabling CTCSS tones, are more relevant to analog systems or specific filtering techniques, but not the primary method for group selection in digital voice systems.

# 4.2.10 Optimal Receiver Filter Bandwidth for SSB Reception

## T4B10

Which of the following receiver filter bandwidths provides the best signal-to-noise ratio for SSB reception?

- 1. 500 Hz
- 2. 1000 Hz
- 3. **2400 Hz**
- 4. 5000 Hz

# **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of the receiver filter bandwidth as a gatekeeper that decides which signals get through to your radio. If the gate is too narrow (like 500 Hz), it might block some parts of the SSB signal, making it harder to hear clearly. If the gate is too wide (like 5000 Hz), it lets in a lot of noise along with the signal, which also makes it harder to hear clearly. The best gate size (2400 Hz) is just right—it lets through the entire SSB signal without letting in too much noise.

# **Advanced Explanation**

The signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) is a measure of how much desired signal is present compared to unwanted noise. For SSB (Single Sideband) reception, the optimal filter bandwidth should be wide enough to pass the entire SSB signal but narrow enough to exclude as much noise as possible. The typical bandwidth of an SSB signal is around 2400 Hz, which includes the voice frequencies and some guard bands. A filter bandwidth of 2400 Hz is therefore ideal because it matches the signal bandwidth, maximizing the SNR. A narrower bandwidth would attenuate parts of the signal, reducing the SNR, while a wider bandwidth would include more noise, also reducing the SNR.

# 4.2.11 Programming Requirements for D-STAR Transceivers

## T4B11

Which of the following must be programmed into a D-STAR digital transceiver before transmitting?

- 1. Your call sign
- 2. Your output power
- 3. The codec type being used
- 4. All these choices are correct

#### **Explanation**

Before transmitting with a D-STAR digital transceiver, it is essential to program your call sign into the device. This ensures proper identification and compliance with regulatory requirements. The other options, such as output power and codec type, are typically managed automatically by the transceiver or are not mandatory for basic operation.

# 4.2.12 Tuning an FM Receiver Above or Below a Signal's Frequency

## T4B12

What is the result of tuning an FM receiver above or below a signal's frequency?

- 1. Change in audio pitch
- 2. Sideband inversion
- 3. Generation of a heterodyne tone
- 4. Distortion of the signal's audio

# **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to listen to your favorite radio station, but instead of tuning directly to the station's frequency, you accidentally tune slightly above or below it. What happens? The audio you hear becomes distorted, like trying to listen to a song with a scratched CD. This is because the FM receiver is designed to decode the signal precisely at the correct frequency. If you're off, the audio gets messed up.

# **Advanced Explanation**

FM (Frequency Modulation) receivers are designed to demodulate the signal based on the exact frequency of the carrier wave. When you tune the receiver above or below the signal's frequency, the demodulation process is no longer aligned with the carrier wave's frequency. This misalignment causes the audio signal to be distorted because the receiver is not correctly interpreting the frequency variations that encode the audio information. The distortion occurs because the receiver's demodulator is not synchronized with the incoming signal, leading to errors in the decoded audio.

# Chapter 5 ELECTRICAL PRINCI-PLES

# 5.1 Electrical Essentials

# 5.1.1 Units of Electrical Current

# T5A01

Electrical current is measured in which of the following units?

- 1. Volts
- 2. Watts
- 3. Ohms
- 4. Amperes

Electrical current is the flow of electric charge, and it is measured in amperes (A). Volts measure voltage, watts measure power, and ohms measure resistance. Therefore, the correct answer is  $\mathbf{D}$ .

# 5.1.2 Electrical Power Measurement

# T5A02

Electrical power is measured in which of the following units?

- 1. Volts
- 2. Watts
- 3. Watt-hours
- 4. Amperes

Electrical power is the rate at which electrical energy is transferred by an electric circuit. The standard unit for measuring electrical power is the **Watt** (W). This unit is named after the Scottish engineer James Watt, who made significant contributions to the development of the steam engine.

Volts measure electrical potential difference, Watt-hours measure energy (power over time), and Amperes measure electrical current. Therefore, the correct answer is **B**: Watts.

# 5.1.3 Flow of Electrons in an Electric Circuit

# T5A03

What is the name for the flow of electrons in an electric circuit?

- 1. Voltage
- 2. Resistance
- 3. Capacitance
- 4. Current

The flow of electrons in an electric circuit is referred to as **current**. This is a fundamental concept in electrical engineering and physics, describing the movement of electric charge through a conductor.

# 5.1.4 Units of Electrical Resistance

# T5A04

What are the units of electrical resistance?

- 1. Siemens
- 2. Mhos
- 3. Ohms
- 4. Coulombs

Electrical resistance is a measure of the opposition to the flow of electric current in a conductor. The unit of electrical resistance is the Ohm, symbolized by the Greek letter  $\Omega$ . This unit is named after Georg Simon Ohm, who formulated Ohm's Law, which relates voltage, current, and resistance in an electrical circuit. The other options listed are units for different electrical properties: Siemens and Mhos are units of electrical conductance, and Coulombs are units of electric charge.

# 5.1.5 Force Causing Electron Flow

# T5A05

What is the electrical term for the force that causes electron flow?

- 1. Voltage
- 2. Ampere-hours
- 3. Capacitance
- 4. Inductance

The correct answer is **Voltage**. Voltage is the electrical potential difference that causes electrons to move in a circuit, creating an electric current.

# 5.1.6 Unit of Frequency

## T5A06

What is the unit of frequency?

- 1. Hertz
- 2. Henry
- 3. Farad
- 4. Tesla

The unit of frequency is Hertz (Hz), which represents the number of cycles per second. This is a fundamental concept in radio technology and physics, describing how often a periodic event occurs.

# 5.1.7 Conductivity of Metals

# T5A07

Why are metals generally good conductors of electricity?

- 1. They have relatively high density
- 2. They have many free electrons
- 3. They have many free protons
- 4. All these choices are correct

Metals are good conductors of electricity because they have many free electrons that can move easily through the material, allowing the flow of electric current. This is a fundamental property of metals that makes them essential in electrical wiring and components.

# 5.1.8 Good Electrical Insulator

#### T5A08

Which of the following is a good electrical insulator?

- 1. Copper
- 2. Glass
- 3. Aluminum
- 4. Mercury

A good electrical insulator is a material that does not allow electric current to flow through it easily. Among the choices, glass is the best insulator because it has very high resistance to the flow of electric current. Copper, aluminum, and mercury are all conductors, meaning they allow electric current to flow through them easily.

# 5.1.9 Description of Alternating Current

# T5A09

Which of the following describes alternating current?

- 1. Current that alternates between a positive direction and zero
- 2. Current that alternates between a negative direction and zero
- 3. Current that alternates between positive and negative directions
- 4. All these answers are correct

Alternating current (AC) is a type of electrical current that periodically reverses direction. Unlike direct current (DC), which flows in a single direction, AC alternates between positive and negative directions. This characteristic is essential for the efficient transmission of electrical power over long distances. The correct answer is **C**, as it accurately describes the nature of alternating current.

# 5.1.10 Rate of Electrical Energy Usage

# T5A10

Which term describes the rate at which electrical energy is used?

- 1. Resistance
- 2. Current
- 3. Power
- 4. Voltage

The term that describes the rate at which electrical energy is used is **Power**. Power is defined as the amount of energy transferred or converted per unit time. In electrical systems, it is typically measured in watts (W).

# 5.1.11 Type of Current Flow Opposed by Resistance

## T5A11

What type of current flow is opposed by resistance?

- 1. Direct current
- 2. Alternating current
- 3. RF current
- 4. All these choices are correct

Resistance is a property of a material that opposes the flow of electric current, regardless of the type of current. Whether it is direct current (DC), alternating current (AC), or radio frequency (RF) current, resistance will always oppose the flow. Therefore, the correct answer is that all these choices are correct.

# 5.1.12 Frequency of Alternating Current

## T5A12

What describes the number of times per second that an alternating current makes a complete cycle?

- 1. Pulse rate
- 2. Speed
- 3. Wavelength
- 4. Frequency

The question asks about the term that describes how many complete cycles an alternating current (AC) completes in one second. The correct answer is **Frequency**, which is measured in Hertz (Hz). Frequency is a fundamental concept in AC circuits and radio technology, indicating how often the current changes direction per second.

# 5.2 Measurement Refresher

# 5.2.1 Milliamperes Conversion

## T5B01

How many milliamperes is 1.5 amperes?

- 1. 15 milliamperes
- 2. 150 milliamperes
- 3. 1500 milliamperes
- 4. 15,000 milliamperes

# **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of amperes (A) and milliamperes (mA) like dollars and cents. Just as 1 dollar is equal to 100 cents, 1 ampere is equal to 1000 milliamperes. So, if you have 1.5 dollars, you have 150 cents. Similarly, 1.5 amperes is 1500 milliamperes.

# **Advanced Explanation**

The prefix milli- denotes one-thousandth of a unit. Therefore, 1 ampere (A) is equivalent to 1000 milliamperes (mA). To convert amperes to milliamperes, you multiply the value in amperes by 1000.

$$1.5 \,\mathrm{A} \times 1000 = 1500 \,\mathrm{mA}$$

Thus, 1.5 amperes is equal to 1500 milliamperes.

# 5.2.2 Frequency Conversion

# T5B02

Which is equal to 1,500,000 hertz?

- 1. 1500 kHz
- 2. 1500 MHz
- 3. 15 GHz
- 4. 150 kHz

# **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a big number like 1,500,000 hertz (Hz). To make it easier to talk about, we can convert it into smaller units like kilohertz (kHz) or megahertz (MHz). Think of it like converting dollars into cents or euros. In this case, 1,500,000 Hz is the same as 1500 kHz because 1 kHz equals 1000 Hz.

# **Advanced Explanation**

Frequency is measured in hertz (Hz), where 1 Hz is one cycle per second. For larger frequencies, we use prefixes like kilo (k), mega (M), and giga (G) to represent multiples of 1000. Specifically:

- 1 kHz = 1000 Hz
- 1 MHz = 1000 kHz = 1,000,000 Hz
- 1 GHz = 1000 MHz = 1,000,000,000 Hz

To convert 1,500,000 Hz to kHz, divide by 1000:

$$1,500,000 \,\mathrm{Hz} \div 1000 = 1500 \,\mathrm{kHz}$$

Thus, 1,500,000 Hz is equal to 1500 kHz.

## 5.2.3 Kilovolt Definition

## T5B03

Which is equal to one kilovolt?

- 1. One one-thousandth of a volt
- 2. One hundred volts
- 3. One thousand volts
- 4. One million volts

# **Intuitive Explanation**

A kilovolt is simply a way to say one thousand volts. Think of it like a kilometer being one thousand meters. It's just a bigger unit for measuring voltage.

# **Advanced Explanation**

The prefix kilo in the International System of Units (SI) denotes a factor of one thousand. Therefore, one kilovolt (kV) is equivalent to one thousand volts (V). This is a standard unit used in electrical engineering to measure high voltages, such as those found in power transmission lines.

# 5.2.4 Understanding Microvolts

#### T5B04

Which is equal to one microvolt?

- 1. One one-millionth of a volt
- 2. One million volts
- 3. One thousand kilovolts
- 4. One one-thousandth of a volt

# **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine a volt as a big pizza. If you cut that pizza into one million tiny slices, each slice would be a microvolt. So, a microvolt is just a very, very small piece of a volt—specifically, one one-millionth of it. It's like comparing a single grain of sand to a whole beach!

# **Advanced Explanation**

In the International System of Units (SI), the prefix micro denotes a factor of  $10^{-6}$ . Therefore, one microvolt ( $\mu V$ ) is equal to  $10^{-6}$  volts. This means that one microvolt is one one-millionth of a volt. Understanding these prefixes is crucial in electronics and radio technology, as they help in expressing very small or very large quantities in a more manageable form.

# 5.2.5 Understanding Milliwatts and Watts

## T5B05

Which is equal to 500 milliwatts?

- 1. 0.02 watts
- 2. **0.5** watts
- 3. 5 watts
- 4. 50 watts

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a small LED light that uses 500 milliwatts of power. To understand how much power that is in watts, think of it like this: 1 watt is like a big glass of water, and 1 milliwatt is like a tiny drop from that glass. So, 500 milliwatts is like 500 tiny drops, which is half of the big glass. Therefore, 500 milliwatts is equal to 0.5 watts.

# **Advanced Explanation**

The unit milliwatt (mW) is a subunit of the watt (W), where 1 milliwatt is equal to one-thousandth of a watt. Mathematically, this can be expressed as:

$$1 \text{ mW} = \frac{1}{1000} \text{ W} = 0.001 \text{ W}$$

To convert 500 milliwatts to watts, you multiply by the conversion factor:

$$500 \text{ mW} \times 0.001 \frac{\text{W}}{\text{mW}} = 0.5 \text{ W}$$

Thus, 500 milliwatts is equal to 0.5 watts. This conversion is essential in radio technology when dealing with power levels in different units.

# 5.2.6 Understanding Milliamperes and Amperes

## T5B06

Which is equal to 3000 milliamperes?

- 1. 0.003 amperes
- 2. 0.3 amperes
- 3. 3,000,000 amperes
- 4. 3 amperes

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of milliamperes (mA) as tiny droplets of electric current, while amperes (A) are like big buckets. To convert milliamperes to amperes, you just need to know that 1000 milliamperes make up 1 ampere. So, 3000 milliamperes is like having 3 big buckets of current.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

The unit of electric current is the ampere (A). Milliamperes (mA) are a smaller unit, where 1 ampere equals 1000 milliamperes. To convert milliamperes to amperes, you divide the number of milliamperes by 1000. Therefore, 3000 milliamperes is calculated as follows:

$$3000 \,\mathrm{mA} \div 1000 = 3 \,\mathrm{A}$$

Thus, 3000 milliamperes is equal to 3 amperes.

# 5.2.7 Unit Conversion: MHz to kHz

#### T5B07

Which is equal to 3.525 MHz?

- 1. 0.003525 kHz
- 2. 35.25 kHz
- 3. **3525** kHz
- 4. 3,525,000 kHz

# **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of MHz (Megahertz) and kHz (kilohertz) as different units for measuring frequency, just like miles and kilometers are different units for measuring distance. 1 MHz is equal to 1000 kHz. So, to convert 3.525 MHz to kHz, you simply multiply by 1000. It's like converting 3.525 miles to kilometers by multiplying by 1.609, but in this case, the conversion factor is 1000.

# **Advanced Explanation**

The prefix Mega (M) in MHz stands for  $10^6$ , and kilo (k) in kHz stands for  $10^3$ . Therefore, to convert from MHz to kHz, you multiply by  $10^3$  (or 1000). Mathematically, this is represented as:

$$3.525 \,\mathrm{MHz} = 3.525 \times 10^3 \,\mathrm{kHz} = 3525 \,\mathrm{kHz}$$

This conversion is straightforward and does not require complex calculations. The key is understanding the relationship between the prefixes and applying the correct conversion factor.

# 5.2.8 Unit Conversion: Picofarads to Microfarads

# T5B08

Which is equal to 1,000,000 picofarads?

- 1. 0.001 microfarads
- 2. 1 microfarad
- 3. 1000 microfarads
- 4. 1,000,000,000 microfarads

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a tiny bucket called a picofarad (pF) that can hold a very small amount of water. Now, if you have 1,000,000 of these tiny buckets, how many bigger buckets called microfarads ( $\mu$ F) would you need to hold the same amount of water? The answer is 1 microfarad, because 1,000,000 picofarads is equal to 1 microfarad. It's like converting 1,000,000 pennies into dollars—you get 1 dollar!

# **Advanced Explanation**

Capacitance is measured in farads (F), but in practical applications, we often use smaller units like microfarads ( $\mu$ F) and picofarads (pF). The relationship between these units is as follows:

1 microfarad(
$$\mu F$$
) = 1,000,000 picofarads( $pF$ )

Therefore, 1,000,000 picofarads is equivalent to 1 microfarad. This conversion is straightforward and does not require complex calculations, but it is essential to understand the relationship between these units when working with capacitors in electronic circuits.

## 5.2.9 Power Increase in Decibels

#### T5B09

Which decibel value most closely represents a power increase from 5 watts to 10 watts?

- 1. 2 dB
- 2. **3 dB**
- 3. 5 dB
- 4. 10 dB

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a light bulb that uses 5 watts of power. If you double the power to 10 watts, the bulb will be brighter. In the world of decibels (dB), which measure changes in power, doubling the power corresponds to an increase of approximately 3 dB. So, going from 5 watts to 10 watts is like turning up the brightness by 3 dB.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

The decibel (dB) is a logarithmic unit used to express the ratio of two power levels. The formula to calculate the power increase in decibels is:

$$dB = 10\log_{10}\left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right)$$

Where  $P_1$  is the initial power and  $P_2$  is the final power. In this case,  $P_1 = 5$  watts and  $P_2 = 10$  watts. Plugging these values into the formula:

$$dB = 10 \log_{10} \left(\frac{10}{5}\right) = 10 \log_{10}(2) \approx 10 \times 0.301 = 3.01 dB$$

Thus, the power increase from 5 watts to 10 watts is approximately 3 dB.

## 5.2.10 Power Decrease in Decibels

## T5B10

Which decibel value most closely represents a power decrease from 12 watts to 3 watts?

- 1. -1 dB
- 2. -3 dB
- 3. **-6 dB**
- 4. -9 dB

# **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a light bulb that's shining at 12 watts. If you dim it down to 3 watts, it's like turning down the brightness by a certain amount. Decibels (dB) are a way to measure this change in power. A decrease of 6 dB means the power has been reduced to one-fourth of its original value, which is exactly what happened here (12 watts to 3 watts).

# **Advanced Explanation**

The decibel (dB) is a logarithmic unit used to express the ratio of two power levels. The formula to calculate the power ratio in decibels is:

$$dB = 10 \log_{10} \left( \frac{P_2}{P_1} \right)$$

Where  $P_1$  is the initial power and  $P_2$  is the final power. In this case,  $P_1 = 12$  watts and  $P_2 = 3$  watts. Plugging these values into the formula:

$$dB = 10 \log_{10} \left(\frac{3}{12}\right) = 10 \log_{10} \left(\frac{1}{4}\right) = 10 \times (-0.602) \approx -6 dB$$

Thus, a power decrease from 12 watts to 3 watts corresponds to a decrease of approximately -6 dB.

# 5.2.11 Power Increase in Decibels

## T5B11

Which decibed value represents a power increase from 20 watts to 200 watts?

- 1. **10** dB
- 2. 12 dB
- 3. 18 dB
- 4. 28 dB

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a small speaker that uses 20 watts of power. If you upgrade to a bigger speaker that uses 200 watts, how much louder is it? Decibels (dB) are used to measure

this increase in power. A 10 dB increase means the power has increased by a factor of 10. So, going from 20 watts to 200 watts is a 10 dB increase.

# **Advanced Explanation**

The decibel (dB) is a logarithmic unit used to express the ratio of two power levels. The formula to calculate the power ratio in decibels is:

$$dB = 10 \log_{10} \left( \frac{P_2}{P_1} \right)$$

Where  $P_1$  is the initial power level and  $P_2$  is the final power level. In this case,  $P_1 = 20$  watts and  $P_2 = 200$  watts. Plugging these values into the formula:

$$dB = 10 \log_{10} \left( \frac{200}{20} \right) = 10 \log_{10}(10) = 10 \times 1 = 10 dB$$

Thus, the power increase from 20 watts to 200 watts is 10 dB.

# 5.2.12 Frequency Conversion

## T5B12

Which is equal to 28400 kHz?

- 1. 28.400 kHz
- 2. 2.800 MHz
- 3. 284.00 MHz
- 4. **28.400** MHz

# **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a big number like 28400 kHz, and you want to make it easier to read by converting it to a smaller unit. Just like converting 1000 meters to 1 kilometer, we can convert kHz to MHz. Here, 28400 kHz is the same as 28.400 MHz because 1000 kHz equals 1 MHz.

#### Advanced Explanation

Frequency units can be converted using the relationship between kilohertz (kHz) and megahertz (MHz). Specifically, 1 MHz is equal to 1000 kHz. To convert 28400 kHz to MHz, divide by 1000:

$$28400 \text{ kHz} \div 1000 = 28.400 \text{ MHz}$$

Thus, 28400 kHz is equivalent to 28.400 MHz. This conversion is straightforward and is commonly used in radio frequency measurements to simplify large numbers.

# 5.2.13 Frequency Conversion: 2425 MHz

#### T5B13

Which is equal to 2425 MHz?

- 1. 0.002425 GHz
- 2. 24.25 GHz
- 3. **2.425** GHz
- 4. 2425 GHz

# **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a big number like 2425 MHz, and you want to make it easier to read by converting it to GHz. Think of MHz as millions and GHz as billions. To convert MHz to GHz, you just need to move the decimal point three places to the left. So, 2425 MHz becomes 2.425 GHz. Easy, right?

# **Advanced Explanation**

The question involves converting a frequency from megahertz (MHz) to gigahertz (GHz). The prefix mega denotes  $10^6$  and giga denotes  $10^9$ . Therefore, to convert MHz to GHz, you divide by  $10^3$  (or move the decimal point three places to the left).

Mathematically, the conversion is:

$$2425 \,\mathrm{MHz} = \frac{2425}{10^3} \,\mathrm{GHz} = 2.425 \,\mathrm{GHz}$$

This confirms that the correct answer is 2.425 GHz.

# 5.3 Electronics Unvolted

# 5.3.1 Energy Storage in an Electric Field

## T5C01

What describes the ability to store energy in an electric field?

- 1. Inductance
- 2. Resistance
- 3. Tolerance
- 4. Capacitance

Capacitance is the property of a system that allows it to store energy in an electric field. This is typically achieved through the use of capacitors, which consist of two conductive plates separated by an insulating material. When a voltage is applied across the plates, an electric field is created, and energy is stored in this field.

# 5.3.2 Unit of Capacitance

#### T5C02

What is the unit of capacitance?

- 1. The farad
- 2. The ohm
- 3. The volt
- 4. The henry

The unit of capacitance is the farad, named after the English physicist Michael Faraday. Capacitance measures a capacitor's ability to store electric charge. The farad is a large unit, so capacitance is often expressed in microfarads ( $\mu$ F), nanofarads (nF), or picofarads (pF).

# 5.3.3 Energy Storage in a Magnetic Field

#### T5C03

What describes the ability to store energy in a magnetic field?

- 1. Admittance
- 2. Capacitance
- 3. Resistance
- 4. Inductance

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of a magnetic field like a sponge that can soak up energy. When you pass an electric current through a coil of wire, it creates a magnetic field around it. This magnetic field can store energy, just like a sponge holds water. The ability of the coil to store this energy in its magnetic field is called **inductance**.

## **Advanced Explanation**

Inductance is a property of an electrical conductor, typically a coil, that quantifies its ability to store energy in a magnetic field when an electric current flows through it. The energy stored in the magnetic field is given by the formula:

$$E = \frac{1}{2}LI^2$$

where E is the energy stored, L is the inductance, and I is the current. Inductance is measured in henries (H). The other options, admittance, capacitance, and resistance, relate to different electrical properties and do not describe the storage of energy in a magnetic field.

#### 5.3.4 Unit of Inductance

#### T5C04

What is the unit of inductance?

- 1. The coulomb
- 2. The farad
- 3. The henry
- 4. The ohm

The unit of inductance is the henry, named after the American scientist Joseph Henry. Inductance is a property of an electrical conductor which opposes a change in current. The henry is the standard unit used to measure this property.

# 5.3.5 Unit of Impedance

#### T5C05

What is the unit of impedance?

- 1. The volt
- 2. The ampere
- 3. The coulomb
- 4. The ohm

Impedance is a measure of opposition to the flow of alternating current (AC) in a circuit, and it is measured in ohms  $(\Omega)$ , just like resistance. The correct answer is **D**.

#### 5.3.6 RF Abbreviation

#### T5C06

What does the abbreviation "RF" mean?

- 1. Radio frequency signals of all types
- 2. The resonant frequency of a tuned circuit
- 3. The real frequency transmitted as opposed to the apparent frequency
- 4. Reflective force in antenna transmission lines

The abbreviation RF stands for **Radio Frequency**, which refers to the range of electromagnetic frequencies used for communication signals. This includes all types of radio frequency signals, making option A the correct answer.

### 5.3.7 Megahertz Abbreviation

#### T5C07

What is the abbreviation for megahertz?

- 1. MH
- 2. mh
- 3. Mhz
- 4. **MHz**

The correct abbreviation for megahertz is **MHz**. The prefix mega is abbreviated as M and hertz is abbreviated as Hz. Therefore, the correct combination is MHz.

#### 5.3.8 Formula for Electrical Power in a DC Circuit

#### T5C08

What is the formula used to calculate electrical power (P) in a DC circuit?

- 1. P = I E
- 2. P = E / I
- 3. P = E I
- 4. P = I + E

The formula for calculating electrical power in a DC circuit is straightforward. The correct formula is  $P = I \times E$ , where P is power in watts, I is current in amperes, and E is voltage in volts. This formula is derived from the basic principles of electrical power, which states that power is the product of voltage and current.

#### 5.3.9 Power Calculation in DC Circuits

#### T5C09

How much power is delivered by a voltage of 13.8 volts DC and a current of 10 amperes?

- 1. **138** watts
- 2. 0.7 watts
- 3. 23.8 watts
- 4. 3.8 watts

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a water hose. The voltage is like the water pressure, and the current is like the amount of water flowing through the hose. Power is how much work the water can do, like turning a water wheel. If you have a lot of pressure (voltage) and a lot of water (current), you can do a lot of work (power). In this case, 13.8 volts and 10 amperes give you 138 watts of power.

In electrical circuits, power P is calculated using the formula:

$$P = V \times I$$

where V is the voltage in volts and I is the current in amperes. For this question, the voltage V is 13.8 volts and the current I is 10 amperes. Plugging these values into the formula:

$$P = 13.8 \, \text{volts} \times 10 \, \text{amperes} = 138 \, \text{watts}$$

Thus, the power delivered is 138 watts.

#### 5.3.10 Power Calculation in DC Circuits

#### T5C10

How much power is delivered by a voltage of 12 volts DC and a current of 2.5 amperes?

- 1. 4.8 watts
- 2. **30** watts
- 3. 14.5 watts
- 4. 0.208 watts

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a water hose (the voltage) and you're pushing water through it (the current). The power is like how much water you can push through the hose in a certain amount of time. If you have a strong hose (12 volts) and you're pushing a lot of water (2.5 amperes), you're going to get a lot of power!

#### Advanced Explanation

In electrical circuits, power P is calculated using the formula:

$$P = V \times I$$

where V is the voltage in volts and I is the current in amperes. Given a voltage of 12 volts and a current of 2.5 amperes, the power can be calculated as follows:

$$P = 12 \text{ V} \times 2.5 \text{ A} = 30 \text{ watts}$$

Thus, the correct answer is 30 watts.

# 5.3.11 Current Calculation for Power Delivery

#### T5C11

How much current is required to deliver 120 watts at a voltage of 12 volts DC?

- 1. 0.1 amperes
- 2. 10 amperes
- 3. 12 amperes
- 4. 132 amperes

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a water pipe. The voltage is like the water pressure, and the current is like the flow rate of the water. If you want to deliver a certain amount of water (power), you need to adjust the flow rate (current) based on the pressure (voltage). In this case, you need to find out how much water flow (current) is needed to deliver 120 watts of power with 12 volts of pressure.

### **Advanced Explanation**

To determine the current required to deliver a specific amount of power at a given voltage, we use the formula:

$$P = V \times I$$

where P is power in watts, V is voltage in volts, and I is current in amperes. Rearranging the formula to solve for current:

$$I = \frac{P}{V}$$

Substituting the given values:

$$I = \frac{120 \text{ watts}}{12 \text{ volts}} = 10 \text{ amperes}$$

Thus, 10 amperes of current are required to deliver 120 watts at 12 volts DC.

# 5.3.12 Impedance

#### T5C12

What is impedance?

- 1. The opposition to AC current flow
- 2. The inverse of resistance
- 3. The Q or Quality Factor of a component
- 4. The power handling capability of a component

Impedance is a fundamental concept in radio technology, particularly when dealing with alternating current (AC) circuits. It represents the total opposition that a circuit presents to the flow of AC current, encompassing both resistance and reactance. This is crucial for understanding how signals behave in various components and circuits.

#### 5.3.13 Abbreviation for Kilohertz

#### T5C13

What is the abbreviation for kilohertz?

- 1. KHZ
- 2. khz
- 3. khZ
- 4. **kHz**

The correct abbreviation for kilohertz is  $\mathbf{kHz}$ , where k stands for kilo (a unit prefix meaning one thousand) and Hz stands for hertz (the unit of frequency). The lowercase k and uppercase Hz are standard in scientific notation.

# 5.4 Circuit Crunchers

# 5.4.1 Formula for Calculating Current in a Circuit

#### T5D01

What formula is used to calculate current in a circuit?

- 1. I = E R
- 2. I = E / R
- 3. I = E + R
- 4. I = E R

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a water pipe. The water flow (current) depends on the pressure (voltage) and the resistance of the pipe. If you increase the pressure, more water flows. If the pipe is narrower (more resistance), less water flows. The formula  $I = \frac{E}{R}$  simply tells us that current is voltage divided by resistance. Easy, right?

#### Advanced Explanation

Ohm's Law is a fundamental principle in electrical engineering that relates voltage (E), current (I), and resistance (R) in a circuit. The law states that the current through a conductor between two points is directly proportional to the voltage across the two points and inversely proportional to the resistance between them. Mathematically, this is expressed as:

$$I = \frac{E}{R}$$

where:

- I is the current in amperes (A),
- E is the voltage in volts (V),
- R is the resistance in ohms  $(\Omega)$ .

This formula is essential for analyzing and designing electrical circuits.

# 5.4.2 Voltage Calculation Formula

#### T5D02

What formula is used to calculate voltage in a circuit?

- 1.  $E = I \times R$
- 2. E = I / R
- 3. E = I + R
- 4. E = I R

#### Intuitive Explanation

Imagine you have a water hose. The water flow (current, I) is like the amount of water coming out of the hose. The resistance (R) is like the narrowness of the hose. The voltage (E) is the pressure pushing the water through the hose. To find out how much pressure is needed to push a certain amount of water through a hose of a certain narrowness, you multiply the water flow by the narrowness. That's why the formula is  $E = I \times R$ .

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In electrical circuits, voltage (E) is the potential difference that drives the current (I) through a resistance (R). Ohm's Law, which is fundamental in electrical engineering, states that the voltage across a conductor is directly proportional to the current flowing through it, provided the temperature remains constant. The mathematical representation of Ohm's Law is:

$$E = I \times R$$

Where:

- E is the voltage in volts (V),
- I is the current in amperes (A),
- R is the resistance in ohms  $(\Omega)$ .

This formula is essential for calculating the voltage in a circuit when the current and resistance are known. It is widely used in designing and analyzing electrical circuits.

# 5.4.3 Formula for Calculating Resistance

#### T5D03

What formula is used to calculate resistance in a circuit?

- 1.  $R = E \times I$
- 2. R = E / I
- 3. R = E + I
- 4. R = E I

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a water pipe. The water pressure (E) is like the voltage, and the flow rate (I) is like the current. The resistance (R) is how much the pipe resists the flow of water. To find out how much the pipe resists, you divide the pressure by the flow rate. So, resistance is voltage divided by current.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In electrical circuits, resistance (R) is a measure of how much a material opposes the flow of electric current. According to Ohm's Law, the relationship between voltage (E), current (I), and resistance (R) is given by the formula:

$$R = \frac{E}{I}$$

This formula states that resistance is equal to the voltage across the circuit divided by the current flowing through it. This fundamental relationship is crucial for analyzing and designing electrical circuits.

#### 5.4.4 Resistance Calculation

#### T5D04

What is the resistance of a circuit in which a current of 3 amperes flows when connected to 90 volts?

- 1. 3 ohms
- 2. **30** ohms
- 3. 93 ohms
- 4. 270 ohms

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a water hose connected to a pump. The pump is like the voltage, pushing water (current) through the hose. If the pump is pushing 90 units of pressure and you get 3 units of water flow, the hose's resistance is like how much it's resisting the water flow. In this case, the resistance is 30 ohms, meaning the hose is not too tight or too loose—just right for the flow.

#### Advanced Explanation

To find the resistance in a circuit, we use Ohm's Law, which states that  $V = I \times R$ , where V is voltage, I is current, and R is resistance. Rearranging the formula to solve for resistance, we get  $R = \frac{V}{I}$ . Given V = 90 volts and I = 3 amperes, the resistance R is calculated as follows:

$$R = \frac{V}{I} = \frac{90}{3} = 30 \text{ ohms}$$

Thus, the correct answer is 30 ohms.

#### 5.4.5 Resistance Calculation

#### T5D05

What is the resistance of a circuit for which the applied voltage is 12 volts and the current flow is 1.5 amperes?

- 1. 18 ohms
- 2. 0.125 ohms
- 3. **8** ohms
- 4. 13.5 ohms

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a water hose. The voltage is like the water pressure, and the current is like the flow of water. The resistance is how much the hose resists the flow of water. If you have a certain pressure (voltage) and a certain flow (current), you can figure out how much the hose is resisting the flow. In this case, with 12 volts and 1.5 amperes, the resistance is 8 ohms.

### **Advanced Explanation**

According to Ohm's Law, the resistance R in a circuit can be calculated using the formula:

$$R = \frac{V}{I}$$

where V is the voltage and I is the current. Given V = 12 volts and I = 1.5 amperes, we can substitute these values into the formula:

$$R = \frac{12}{1.5} = 8 \text{ ohms}$$

Thus, the resistance of the circuit is 8 ohms.

# 5.4.6 Resistance Calculation from Voltage and Current

#### T5D06

What is the resistance of a circuit that draws 4 amperes from a 12-volt source?

- 1. **3** ohms
- 2. 16 ohms
- 3. 48 ohms
- 4. 8 ohms

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a water hose connected to a water source. The voltage is like the water pressure, and the current is like the amount of water flowing through the hose. Resistance is how much the hose is squeezing the water flow. If you have a high pressure (12 volts) and a lot of water flowing (4 amperes), the hose isn't squeezing much, so the resistance is low. In this case, it's 3 ohms.

The relationship between voltage (V), current (I), and resistance (R) is given by Ohm's Law:

$$V = I \times R$$

To find the resistance, rearrange the formula:

$$R = \frac{V}{I}$$

Substitute the given values:

$$R = \frac{12 \text{ volts}}{4 \text{ amperes}} = 3 \text{ ohms}$$

Thus, the resistance of the circuit is 3 ohms.

# 5.4.7 Current in a Circuit with Given Voltage and Resistance

#### T5D07

What is the current in a circuit with an applied voltage of 120 volts and a resistance of 80 ohms?

- 1. 9600 amperes
- 2. 200 amperes
- 3. 0.667 amperes
- 4. **1.5** amperes

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a water hose with a certain amount of water pressure (voltage) and a nozzle that restricts the flow (resistance). The amount of water flowing through the hose (current) depends on both the pressure and the size of the nozzle. In this case, with 120 volts of pressure and 80 ohms of resistance, the current is 1.5 amperes.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

According to Ohm's Law, the current I in a circuit is given by the formula:

$$I = \frac{V}{R}$$

where V is the voltage and R is the resistance. Plugging in the given values:

$$I = \frac{120 \text{ volts}}{80 \text{ ohms}} = 1.5 \text{ amperes}$$

Thus, the correct answer is 1.5 amperes.

# 5.4.8 Current Through a Resistor

#### T5D08

What is the current through a 100-ohm resistor connected across 200 volts?

- 1. 20,000 amperes
- 2. 0.5 amperes
- 3. 2 amperes
- 4. 100 amperes

### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a garden hose (the resistor) and you're trying to push water (the current) through it. The voltage is like the pressure you're applying to the water. If you increase the pressure, more water flows through the hose. Similarly, if you increase the voltage, more current flows through the resistor. In this case, you have a 100-ohm resistor and 200 volts of pressure. Using Ohm's Law, you can calculate the current.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

Ohm's Law states that the current I through a resistor is equal to the voltage V across the resistor divided by the resistance R. Mathematically, this is expressed as:

$$I = \frac{V}{R}$$

Given:

$$V = 200$$
 volts,  $R = 100$  ohms

Substituting the values into Ohm's Law:

$$I = \frac{200}{100} = 2 \text{ amperes}$$

Therefore, the current through the resistor is 2 amperes.

# 5.4.9 Current Through a Resistor

#### T5D09

What is the current through a 24-ohm resistor connected across 240 volts?

- 1. 24,000 amperes
- 2. 0.1 amperes
- 3. 10 amperes
- 4. 216 amperes

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a water pipe with a certain resistance to the flow of water. If you increase the pressure (voltage) at one end, more water (current) will flow through the pipe. In this case, the pipe has a resistance of 24 ohms, and the pressure is 240 volts. Using Ohm's Law, we can calculate the current flowing through the resistor.

Ohm's Law states that the current I through a conductor between two points is directly proportional to the voltage V across the two points and inversely proportional to the resistance R of the conductor. Mathematically, Ohm's Law is expressed as:

$$I = \frac{V}{R}$$

Given:

$$V = 240$$
 volts,  $R = 24$  ohms

Substituting the values into Ohm's Law:

$$I = \frac{240}{24} = 10 \text{ amperes}$$

Therefore, the current through the resistor is 10 amperes.

# 5.4.10 Voltage Across a Resistor

#### T5D10

What is the voltage across a 2-ohm resistor if a current of 0.5 amperes flows through it?

- 1. 1 volt
- 2. 0.25 volts
- 3. 2.5 volts
- 4. 1.5 volts

#### Intuitive Explanation

Imagine the resistor as a narrow pipe and the current as water flowing through it. The voltage is like the pressure pushing the water through the pipe. If the pipe is narrow (high resistance) and the water flow is slow (low current), the pressure (voltage) will be low. Conversely, if the pipe is wide (low resistance) and the water flow is fast (high current), the pressure (voltage) will be high. In this case, the pipe is moderately narrow (2 ohms) and the water flow is moderate (0.5 amperes), so the pressure (voltage) is 1 volt.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

The voltage across a resistor can be calculated using Ohm's Law, which states that  $V = I \times R$ , where V is the voltage, I is the current, and R is the resistance. In this problem, the current I is 0.5 amperes and the resistance R is 2 ohms. Plugging these values into Ohm's Law gives:

$$V = 0.5 \,\mathrm{A} \times 2\,\Omega = 1 \,\mathrm{V}$$

Thus, the voltage across the resistor is 1 volt.

# 5.4.11 Voltage Across a Resistor

#### T5D11

What is the voltage across a 10-ohm resistor if a current of 1 ampere flows through it?

- 1. 1 volt
- 2. **10** volts
- 3. 11 volts
- 4. 9 volts

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine the resistor as a narrow pipe and the current as water flowing through it. The voltage is like the pressure pushing the water through the pipe. If the pipe is narrow (high resistance) and the water flow is steady (current), the pressure (voltage) needed to push the water through the pipe is directly related to how narrow the pipe is. In this case, a 10-ohm resistor with 1 ampere of current means the voltage is 10 volts.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

According to Ohm's Law, the voltage V across a resistor is given by the product of the current I flowing through it and the resistance R of the resistor. Mathematically, this is expressed as:

$$V = I \times R$$

Given:

$$I = 1$$
 ampere,  $R = 10$  ohms

Substituting the values:

$$V = 1 \text{ A} \times 10 \Omega = 10 \text{ volts}$$

Thus, the voltage across the resistor is 10 volts.

# 5.4.12 Voltage Across a Resistor

#### T5D12

What is the voltage across a 10-ohm resistor if a current of 2 amperes flows through it?

- 1. 8 volts
- 2. 0.2 volts
- 3. 12 volts
- 4. 20 volts

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine the resistor as a narrow pipe and the current as water flowing through it. The voltage is like the pressure pushing the water through the pipe. If you have a 10-ohm resistor (a specific type of pipe) and a current of 2 amperes (a certain amount of water

flowing), the voltage (pressure) needed can be calculated using Ohm's Law, which is simply voltage equals current times resistance.

#### Advanced Explanation

Ohm's Law states that the voltage V across a resistor is equal to the current I flowing through it multiplied by the resistance R of the resistor. Mathematically, this is expressed as:

$$V = I \times R$$

Given:

$$I = 2 A, \quad R = 10 \Omega$$

Substituting the values into Ohm's Law:

$$V = 2 \,\mathrm{A} \times 10 \,\Omega = 20 \,\mathrm{V}$$

Therefore, the voltage across the resistor is 20 volts.

# 5.4.13 DC Current in Circuit Types

#### T5D13

In which type of circuit is DC current the same through all components?

- 1. Series
- 2. Parallel
- 3. Resonant
- 4. Branch

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine a group of friends walking in a single file line. Each friend represents a component in a circuit, and the line represents the path of the current. In a series circuit, the same current flows through each friend because there's only one path for the current to take. If one friend stops, the whole line stops, just like how a break in a series circuit stops the current flow.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In a series circuit, components are connected end-to-end, forming a single path for the current to flow. According to Kirchhoff's Current Law (KCL), the current entering a node must equal the current leaving the node. Since there are no branches in a series circuit, the current remains constant throughout all components. This is why the DC current is the same through all components in a series circuit. In contrast, parallel circuits have multiple paths for current to flow, resulting in different currents through each branch. Resonant circuits and branch circuits involve more complex behaviors and are not characterized by a constant current through all components.

# 5.4.14 Voltage Across Circuit Components

#### T5D14

In which type of circuit is voltage the same across all components?

- 1. Series
- 2. Parallel
- 3. Resonant
- 4. Branch

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a bunch of light bulbs connected in a circuit. If they are all connected side by side (like in a parallel circuit), each bulb gets the same amount of voltage from the power source. It's like giving each bulb its own direct line to the battery. In a series circuit, the bulbs are connected one after the other, so the voltage gets divided among them. So, in a parallel circuit, the voltage is the same across all components.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In a parallel circuit, all components are connected across the same two points, effectively creating multiple paths for the current to flow. This means that each component experiences the same potential difference (voltage) as the power source. The total current in the circuit is the sum of the currents through each component, but the voltage remains constant across all of them. This is in contrast to a series circuit, where the voltage is divided among the components. Therefore, the correct answer is **Parallel**.

# Chapter 6 ELECTRONIC AND ELEC-TRICAL COMPONENTS

# 6.1 Components Breakdown

# 6.1.1 Component Opposing DC Current Flow

#### T6A01

What electrical component opposes the flow of current in a DC circuit?

- 1. Inductor
- 2. Resistor
- 3. Inverter
- 4. Transformer

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to push a ball through a pipe filled with sand. The sand makes it harder to push the ball through, right? In a DC circuit, a resistor acts like that sand, making it harder for the electric current to flow. It's the component that opposes the flow of current.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

In a DC circuit, a resistor is the component that provides resistance to the flow of electric current. According to Ohm's Law, V = IR, where V is the voltage, I is the current, and R is the resistance. The resistor's primary function is to limit the current flow, thereby controlling the voltage and current in the circuit. Inductors and transformers are more relevant in AC circuits, and inverters are used to convert DC to AC, making the resistor the correct answer for this question.

# 6.1.2 Adjustable Volume Control Component

#### T6A02

What type of component is often used as an adjustable volume control?

- 1. Fixed resistor
- 2. Power resistor
- 3. Potentiometer
- 4. Transformer

A potentiometer is commonly used as an adjustable volume control because it allows for the variation of resistance, which in turn adjusts the signal level. This makes it ideal for controlling volume in audio devices.

#### 6.1.3 Potentiometer Control Parameter

#### T6A03

What electrical parameter is controlled by a potentiometer?

- 1. Inductance
- 2. Resistance
- 3. Capacitance
- 4. Field strength

A potentiometer is a simple device used to control resistance in an electrical circuit. It is commonly found in volume controls for audio equipment, where it adjusts the level of sound by varying the resistance. The correct answer is **B**, as a potentiometer directly controls resistance.

# 6.1.4 Energy Storage in Electric Fields

#### T6A04

What electrical component stores energy in an electric field?

- 1. Varistor
- 2. Capacitor
- 3. Inductor
- 4. Diode

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of a capacitor as a tiny energy storage box for electricity. When you charge it up, it holds onto that energy in an electric field, just like a balloon holds air. When you need that energy back, the capacitor can release it. It's like a quick snack for your electronic devices!

A capacitor is a passive electronic component that stores energy in an electric field. It consists of two conductive plates separated by an insulating material called a dielectric. When a voltage is applied across the plates, an electric field is established, and energy is stored in this field. The amount of energy stored can be calculated using the formula:

$$E = \frac{1}{2}CV^2$$

where E is the energy stored, C is the capacitance, and V is the voltage across the capacitor. Capacitors are widely used in electronic circuits for filtering, energy storage, and signal processing.

# 6.1.5 Electrical Component with Conductive Surfaces and Insulator

#### T6A05

What type of electrical component consists of conductive surfaces separated by an insulator?

- 1. Resistor
- 2. Potentiometer
- 3. Oscillator
- 4. Capacitor

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have two metal plates and you put a piece of plastic between them. Now, if you connect these plates to a battery, the plates will store some electric charge. This setup is like a tiny battery that can store and release energy quickly. This is essentially what a capacitor does—it stores electrical energy using two conductive surfaces separated by an insulator.

#### Advanced Explanation

A capacitor is an electrical component that stores energy in an electric field. It consists of two conductive plates separated by a dielectric (insulator). When a voltage is applied across the plates, an electric field develops across the dielectric, causing positive charge to accumulate on one plate and negative charge on the other. The capacitance C of a capacitor is given by the formula:

$$C = \frac{\epsilon A}{d}$$

where  $\epsilon$  is the permittivity of the dielectric, A is the area of the plates, and d is the distance between the plates. Capacitors are widely used in electronic circuits for filtering, energy storage, and signal processing.

# 6.1.6 Energy Storage in Magnetic Fields

#### T6A06

What type of electrical component stores energy in a magnetic field?

- 1. Varistor
- 2. Capacitor
- 3. Inductor
- 4. Diode

#### Intuitive Explanation

Think of an inductor as a tiny electromagnet. When you send electricity through it, it creates a magnetic field, just like how a magnet works. The inductor stores energy in this magnetic field, kind of like how a spring stores energy when you compress it. So, when the electricity stops flowing, the magnetic field collapses, and the energy is released back into the circuit.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

An inductor is a passive electrical component that stores energy in its magnetic field when an electric current passes through it. It typically consists of a coil of wire, and the energy stored is given by the formula:

$$E = \frac{1}{2}LI^2$$

where E is the energy stored, L is the inductance of the coil, and I is the current flowing through it. The inductor opposes changes in current, which is why it is used in circuits to smooth out current fluctuations. Unlike a capacitor, which stores energy in an electric field, an inductor stores energy in a magnetic field.

# 6.1.7 Electrical Component Constructed as a Coil of Wire

#### T6A07

What electrical component is typically constructed as a coil of wire?

- 1. Switch
- 2. Capacitor
- 3. Diode
- 4. Inductor

#### **Brief Explanation**

An inductor is an electrical component that stores energy in a magnetic field when electric current flows through it. It is typically constructed as a coil of wire, which enhances its ability to store magnetic energy. The other components listed (switch, capacitor, and diode) are not constructed as coils of wire and serve different functions in electrical circuits.

#### 6.1.8 Function of an SPDT Switch

#### T6A08

What is the function of an SPDT switch?

- 1. A single circuit is opened or closed
- 2. Two circuits are opened or closed
- 3. A single circuit is switched between one of two other circuits
- 4. Two circuits are each switched between one of two other circuits

### Intuitive Explanation

An SPDT (Single Pole Double Throw) switch is like a railway switch that can direct a train onto one of two tracks. In electronics, it allows a single input to be connected to one of two outputs. Think of it as a simple way to choose between two options with a single switch.

### **Advanced Explanation**

An SPDT switch has three terminals: one common terminal (the pole) and two other terminals (the throws). The common terminal can be connected to either of the two throws, but not both at the same time. This makes it useful for applications where you need to switch a single signal between two different paths, such as in audio equipment or control circuits. The key feature is that it only switches one circuit at a time, but provides two possible destinations for that circuit.

# 6.1.9 Circuit Protection Components

#### T6A09

What electrical component is used to protect other circuit components from current overloads?

- 1. Fuse
- 2. Thyratron
- 3. Varactor
- 4. All these choices are correct

A fuse is a safety device designed to protect electrical circuits from excessive current. When the current exceeds a certain level, the fuse melts, breaking the circuit and preventing damage to other components. The other options, such as a thyratron (a type of gas-filled tube used in switching applications) and a varactor (a diode used for voltage-controlled capacitance), do not serve this protective function. Therefore, the correct answer is **Fuse**.

# 6.1.10 Battery Chemistries and Rechargeability

#### T6A10

Which of the following battery chemistries is rechargeable?

- 1. Nickel-metal hydride
- 2. Lithium-ion
- 3. Lead-acid
- 4. All these choices are correct

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of batteries as tiny energy storage units. Some batteries, like the ones in your TV remote, are single-use and can't be recharged. Others, like the ones in your phone or car, can be recharged and used over and over again. The question is asking which types of batteries fall into the rechargeable category. The answer is simple: all of them! Nickel-metal hydride, lithium-ion, and lead-acid batteries are all rechargeable.

### Advanced Explanation

Rechargeable batteries, also known as secondary cells, can be recharged by applying an electric current, which reverses the chemical reactions that occur during discharge.

- Nickel-metal hydride (NiMH): These batteries use a nickel oxide hydroxide cathode and a hydrogen-absorbing alloy anode. They are commonly used in portable electronics and hybrid vehicles due to their high energy density and relatively low cost.
- Lithium-ion (Li-ion): These batteries use lithium ions moving between the anode and cathode to store and release energy. They are widely used in consumer electronics, electric vehicles, and renewable energy storage due to their high energy density and long cycle life.
- Lead-acid: These are one of the oldest types of rechargeable batteries, using lead dioxide as the positive electrode and metallic lead as the negative electrode. They are commonly used in automotive applications and backup power systems due to their reliability and low cost.

All three chemistries are designed to be recharged, making them suitable for applications where long-term use is required.

# 6.1.11 Battery Chemistries and Rechargeability

#### T6A11

Which of the following battery chemistries is not rechargeable?

- 1. Nickel-cadmium
- 2. Carbon-zinc
- 3. Lead-acid
- 4. Lithium-ion

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of batteries like water bottles. Some bottles can be refilled (rechargeable), while others are single-use (non-rechargeable). In this question, we're identifying which bottle can't be refilled. Carbon-zinc batteries are like disposable water bottles—once they're empty, they're done!

#### **Advanced Explanation**

Battery chemistries determine whether a battery can be recharged. Rechargeable batteries, such as Nickel-cadmium, Lead-acid, and Lithium-ion, can undergo reversible chemical reactions, allowing them to be recharged multiple times. Carbon-zinc batteries, however, rely on irreversible chemical reactions, making them non-rechargeable. This fundamental difference in chemistry is why Carbon-zinc batteries are single-use.

# 6.1.12 Switch Type in Figure T-2

#### T6A12(A)

What type of switch is represented by component 3 in figure T-2?

- 1. Single-pole single-throw
- 2. Single-pole double-throw
- 3. Double-pole single-throw
- 4. Double-pole double-throw

This question is straightforward and requires identifying the type of switch depicted in the figure. The correct answer is **Single-pole single-throw**, which is a basic switch that controls a single circuit with one input and one output.

# 6.2 Key Specs You Need to Know

# 6.2.1 Forward Voltage Drop in a Diode

#### T6B01

Which is true about forward voltage drop in a diode?

- 1. It is lower in some diode types than in others
- 2. It is proportional to peak inverse voltage
- 3. It indicates that the diode is defective
- 4. It has no impact on the voltage delivered to the load

#### **Explanation**

The forward voltage drop in a diode is the voltage required to allow current to flow through the diode in the forward direction. Different types of diodes, such as silicon diodes and Schottky diodes, have different forward voltage drops. For example, a silicon diode typically has a forward voltage drop of around 0.7 volts, while a Schottky diode

may have a lower forward voltage drop of around 0.3 volts. This variation is due to differences in the materials and construction of the diodes. Therefore, the correct answer is that the forward voltage drop is lower in some diode types than in others.

# 6.2.2 Component for Unidirectional Current Flow

#### T6B02

What electronic component allows current to flow in only one direction?

- 1. Resistor
- 2. Fuse
- 3. Diode
- 4. Driven element

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine a one-way street for electricity. A diode is like a traffic cop that only lets cars (electrons) go in one direction. If they try to go the wrong way, the cop stops them!

#### Advanced Explanation

A diode is a semiconductor device that allows current to flow in one direction (forward bias) while blocking it in the opposite direction (reverse bias). This is due to the formation of a p-n junction within the diode, which creates a potential barrier. When the diode is forward-biased, the barrier is lowered, allowing current to flow. In reverse bias, the barrier is high, preventing current flow. This property makes diodes essential in circuits where unidirectional current flow is required, such as in rectifiers.

# 6.2.3 Electronic Switch Components

#### T6B03

Which of these components can be used as an electronic switch?

- 1. Varistor
- 2. Potentiometer
- 3. Transistor
- 4. Thermistor

#### Explanation

A transistor is a semiconductor device that can act as an electronic switch, allowing or blocking the flow of current based on the input signal. This makes it a fundamental component in digital circuits and amplifiers. The other components listed—varistor, potentiometer, and thermistor—are not designed to function as switches. A varistor is used for voltage protection, a potentiometer is a variable resistor, and a thermistor changes resistance with temperature.

### 6.2.4 Three Regions of Semiconductor Material

#### T6B04

Which of the following components can consist of three regions of semiconductor material?

- 1. Alternator
- 2. Transistor
- 3. Triode
- 4. Pentagrid converter

#### Intuitive Explanation

Think of a transistor as a sandwich with three layers: bread, cheese, and bread again. In this case, the bread and cheese are different types of semiconductor materials. The transistor uses these layers to control the flow of electricity, much like how a sandwich can be cut or stacked to control how much filling you get in each bite.

#### Advanced Explanation

A transistor is a semiconductor device that typically consists of three regions: the emitter, base, and collector. These regions are made of either N-type or P-type semiconductor materials, forming configurations like NPN or PNP. The transistor operates by controlling the flow of current between the emitter and collector through the base. This control is achieved by applying a small current or voltage to the base, which modulates the larger current flowing through the transistor. This property makes transistors essential components in amplifiers, switches, and digital circuits.

# 6.2.5 Transistor Types with Gate, Drain, and Source

#### T6B05

What type of transistor has a gate, drain, and source?

- 1. Varistor
- 2. Field-effect
- 3. Tesla-effect
- 4. Bipolar junction

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of a transistor as a tiny switch that controls the flow of electricity. In a Field-Effect Transistor (FET), the gate is like the handle of the switch. When you turn the handle (apply voltage to the gate), it opens or closes the path for electricity to flow between the drain and the source. It's like turning a faucet to control water flow!

A Field-Effect Transistor (FET) is a type of transistor that uses an electric field to control the flow of current. It has three terminals: the gate, drain, and source. The gate controls the conductivity between the drain and source by modulating the electric field within the device. FETs are widely used in electronics due to their high input impedance and low power consumption. Unlike Bipolar Junction Transistors (BJTs), which use both electrons and holes for conduction, FETs primarily use one type of charge carrier, making them more efficient in certain applications.

### 6.2.6 Cathode Lead Marking on Semiconductor Diodes

#### T6B06

How is the cathode lead of a semiconductor diode often marked on the package?

- 1. With the word cathode
- 2. With a stripe
- 3. With the letter C
- 4. With the letter K

The cathode lead of a semiconductor diode is typically marked with a stripe on the package. This is a standard industry practice to help identify the polarity of the diode.

# 6.2.7 LED Light Emission

#### T6B07

What causes a light-emitting diode (LED) to emit light?

- 1. Forward current
- 2. Reverse current
- 3. Capacitively-coupled RF signal
- 4. Inductively-coupled RF signal

An LED emits light when it is forward-biased, meaning that a forward current is applied. This current allows electrons to recombine with holes within the device, releasing energy in the form of photons, which we perceive as light.

#### 6.2.8 FET Abbreviation

#### T6B08

What does the abbreviation FET stand for?

- 1. Frequency Emission Transmitter
- 2. Fast Electron Transistor
- 3. Free Electron Transmitter
- 4. Field Effect Transistor

The abbreviation FET stands for **Field Effect Transistor**. This is a type of transistor that uses an electric field to control the flow of current. It is widely used in electronic devices for amplification and switching purposes.

#### 6.2.9 Diode Electrodes

#### T6B09

What are the names for the electrodes of a diode?

- 1. Plus and minus
- 2. Source and drain
- 3. Anode and cathode
- 4. Gate and base

The question is straightforward and requires knowledge of basic electronic components. A diode is a semiconductor device that allows current to flow in one direction only. The two electrodes of a diode are called the anode and the cathode. The anode is the positive terminal, and the cathode is the negative terminal. This naming convention is standard in electronics and is essential for understanding how diodes function in circuits.

#### 6.2.10 Power Gain Devices

#### T6B10

Which of the following can provide power gain?

- 1. Transformer
- 2. Transistor
- 3. Reactor
- 4. Resistor

#### Explanation

A transistor is a semiconductor device that can amplify or switch electronic signals and electrical power. It provides power gain by controlling a larger current or voltage with a smaller input signal. In contrast, a transformer changes the voltage level but does not provide power gain, a reactor (inductor) stores energy in a magnetic field, and a resistor dissipates energy as heat. Therefore, the correct answer is **B: Transistor**.

# 6.2.11 Gain in Signal Amplification

#### T6B11

What is the term that describes a device's ability to amplify a signal?

- 1. Gain
- 2. Forward resistance
- 3. Forward voltage drop
- 4. On resistance

The term Gain refers to the ability of a device to amplify a signal. It is a measure of how much the output signal is increased compared to the input signal. This concept is fundamental in understanding how amplifiers work in radio technology.

# 6.2.12 Electrodes of a Bipolar Junction Transistor

#### T6B12

What are the names of the electrodes of a bipolar junction transistor?

- 1. Signal, bias, power
- 2. Emitter, base, collector
- 3. Input, output, supply
- 4. Pole one, pole two, output

A bipolar junction transistor (BJT) has three electrodes: the emitter, the base, and the collector. These electrodes are crucial for the transistor's operation, as they control the flow of current through the device. The emitter emits charge carriers, the base controls the flow, and the collector collects the charge carriers. This structure allows the BJT to amplify signals and switch electronic circuits.

# 6.3 Electronics Essentials

# 6.3.1 Schematic Diagrams

#### T6C01

What is the name of an electrical wiring diagram that uses standard component symbols?

- 1. Bill of materials
- 2. Connector pinout
- 3. Schematic
- 4. Flow chart

A schematic is a type of diagram that represents the elements of a system using abstract, graphic symbols rather than realistic pictures. In electrical engineering, a schematic diagram uses standardized symbols to represent components and their con-

nections in a circuit. This makes it easier to understand and design complex electrical systems.

# 6.3.2 Component Identification in Figure T-1

#### T6C02

What is component 1 in figure T-1?

- 1. Resistor
- 2. Transistor
- 3. Battery
- 4. Connector

This question asks you to identify a specific component labeled as 1 in Figure T-1. The correct answer is a resistor, which is a fundamental electronic component used to limit the flow of electric current in a circuit.

# 6.3.3 Component Identification in Figure T-1

#### T6C03

What is component 2 in figure T-1?

- 1. Resistor
- 2. Transistor
- 3. Indicator lamp
- 4. Connector

This question is straightforward and requires identifying a specific component in a given figure. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{B}$ , which corresponds to a transistor.

# 6.3.4 Identification of Component 3 in Figure T-1

#### T6C04

What is component 3 in figure T-1?

- 1. Resistor
- 2. Transistor
- 3. Lamp
- 4. Ground symbol

This question asks you to identify component 3 in figure T-1. The correct answer is a lamp, which is typically represented by a specific symbol in circuit diagrams.

### 6.3.5 Component Identification in Figure T-1

#### T6C05

What is component 4 in figure T-1?

- 1. Resistor
- 2. Transistor
- 3. Ground symbol
- 4. Battery

This question asks you to identify component 4 in figure T-1. The correct answer is **D**, which corresponds to a battery. This is a straightforward identification question based on the provided figure.

# 6.3.6 Component Identification in Figure T-2

#### T6C06

What is component 6 in figure T-2?

- 1. Resistor
- 2. Capacitor
- 3. Regulator IC
- 4. Transistor

This question asks you to identify a specific component in a schematic diagram. The correct answer is a capacitor, which is commonly used in electronic circuits to store and release electrical energy.

# 6.3.7 Component Identification in Figure T-2

#### T6C07

What is component 8 in figure T-2?

- 1. Resistor
- 2. Inductor
- 3. Regulator IC
- 4. Light emitting diode

This question asks you to identify a specific component labeled as component 8 in Figure T-2. The correct answer is a light emitting diode (LED), which is commonly used in electronic circuits to indicate the status of a circuit or to emit light.

# 6.3.8 Component Identification in Figure T-2

#### T6C08

What is component 9 in figure T-2?

- 1. Variable capacitor
- 2. Variable inductor
- 3. Variable resistor
- 4. Variable transformer

This question is straightforward and requires identifying a specific component in a given figure. The correct answer is a variable resistor, which is commonly used in circuits to adjust resistance levels.

# 6.3.9 Component Identification in Figure T-2

#### T6C09

What is component 4 in figure T-2?

- 1. Variable inductor
- 2. Double-pole switch
- 3. Potentiometer
- 4. Transformer

#### Intuitive Explanation

Imagine you have a magical box that can change the amount of electricity flowing through it. If you put in a little bit of electricity, it can make it stronger or weaker depending on what you need. That's essentially what a transformer does. It's like a volume knob for electricity, but instead of sound, it adjusts the voltage.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

A transformer is an electrical device that transfers electrical energy between two or more circuits through electromagnetic induction. It consists of two coils of wire, known as the primary and secondary windings, which are usually wrapped around a common iron core. When an alternating current (AC) flows through the primary winding, it creates a changing magnetic field in the core, which induces a voltage in the secondary winding. This allows the transformer to step up (increase) or step down (decrease) the voltage level of the AC signal. In the context of figure T-2, component 4 is identified as a transformer based on its typical representation in circuit diagrams and its function in the circuit.

# 6.3.10 Component Identification in Figure T-3

#### T6C10

What is component 3 in figure T-3?

- 1. Connector
- 2. Meter
- 3. Variable capacitor
- 4. Variable inductor

This question asks you to identify component 3 in figure T-3. The correct answer is a variable inductor, which is used to adjust inductance in a circuit.

# 6.3.11 Component Identification in Figure T-3

#### T6C11

What is component 4 in figure T-3?

- 1. Antenna
- 2. Transmitter
- 3. Dummy load
- 4. Ground

This question is straightforward and requires identifying a specific component in a given figure. The correct answer is **Antenna**, which is typically used to transmit or receive radio signals.

# 6.3.12 Schematic Representation in Electrical Diagrams

#### T6C12

Which of the following is accurately represented in electrical schematics?

- 1. Wire lengths
- 2. Physical appearance of components
- 3. Component connections
- 4. All these choices are correct

#### Intuitive Explanation

Electrical schematics are like maps for circuits. They don't show how long the wires are or what the components look like in real life. Instead, they focus on how everything is connected. Think of it as a subway map—it doesn't show the actual distance between stations or what the trains look like, but it clearly shows how to get from one station to another.

In electrical engineering, schematics are used to represent the logical connections between components in a circuit. They use standardized symbols to denote components like resistors, capacitors, and transistors. The primary purpose of a schematic is to illustrate the flow of electrical current and the relationships between components, not to depict physical attributes such as wire lengths or the actual appearance of components. This abstraction allows engineers to focus on the functionality and design of the circuit without being distracted by physical details. Therefore, the correct answer is  $\mathbf{C}$ , as component connections are the key elements represented in electrical schematics.

# 6.4 Core Technologies in Electronics

### 6.4.1 Rectification of Alternating Current

#### T6D01

Which of the following devices or circuits changes an alternating current into a varying direct current signal?

- 1. Transformer
- 2. Rectifier
- 3. Amplifier
- 4. Reflector

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a river that flows back and forth (alternating current). You want to make it flow in just one direction (direct current). A rectifier is like a one-way valve for electricity—it lets the current flow in only one direction, turning the back-and-forth flow into a steady stream.

#### Advanced Explanation

A rectifier is an electrical device that converts alternating current (AC), which periodically reverses direction, to direct current (DC), which flows in only one direction. This process is known as rectification. Rectifiers are typically made using diodes, which allow current to flow in one direction only. There are different types of rectifiers, such as half-wave and full-wave rectifiers, each with its own method of converting AC to DC. The output of a rectifier is not perfectly smooth DC but rather a pulsating DC, which can be further smoothed using capacitors or other filtering techniques.

# 6.4.2 Understanding Relays

#### T6D02

What is a relay?

- 1. An electrically-controlled switch
- 2. A current controlled amplifier
- 3. An inverting amplifier
- 4. A pass transistor

A relay is essentially an electrically-controlled switch. It allows a low-power electrical signal to control a higher-power circuit, making it a crucial component in various electronic and electrical systems. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{A}$ .

#### 6.4.3 Reasons to Use Shielded Wire

#### T6D03

Which of the following is a reason to use shielded wire?

- 1. To decrease the resistance of DC power connections
- 2. To increase the current carrying capability of the wire
- 3. To prevent coupling of unwanted signals to or from the wire
- 4. To couple the wire to other signals

Shielded wire is primarily used to protect the signal carried by the wire from external electromagnetic interference (EMI) and to prevent the wire from emitting EMI that could affect other nearby wires or devices. This is achieved by surrounding the inner conductor with a conductive layer, typically made of braided wire or foil, which acts as a barrier to electromagnetic fields.

# 6.4.4 Electrical Quantity Display

#### T6D04

Which of the following displays an electrical quantity as a numeric value?

- 1. Potentiometer
- 2. Transistor
- 3. Meter
- 4. Relay

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you want to know how much electricity is flowing through a wire. You wouldn't use a knob (potentiometer), a switch (transistor), or a switch that turns things on and off (relay). Instead, you'd use a meter, which is like a tiny computer that shows you the exact number of electricity units.

A meter is an instrument designed to measure and display electrical quantities such as voltage, current, or resistance in numeric form. Unlike a potentiometer, which is a variable resistor used to adjust levels, or a transistor, which is a semiconductor device used to amplify or switch electronic signals, a meter provides a direct readout of the measured value. Relays, on the other hand, are electromechanical switches used to control circuits. Therefore, the correct answer is the meter, as it is specifically designed to display electrical quantities numerically.

### 6.4.5 Voltage Control Circuit

#### T6D05

What type of circuit controls the amount of voltage from a power supply?

- 1. Regulator
- 2. Oscillator
- 3. Filter
- 4. Phase inverter

A voltage regulator is a circuit designed to automatically maintain a constant voltage level. It ensures that the output voltage remains stable regardless of changes in input voltage or load conditions. This is essential for protecting electronic devices from voltage fluctuations.

# 6.4.6 Component for Voltage Reduction

#### T6D06

What component changes 120 V AC power to a lower AC voltage for other uses?

- 1. Variable capacitor
- 2. Transformer
- 3. Transistor
- 4. Diode

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a big water pipe with high pressure, and you need to reduce the pressure to use it in your garden hose. A transformer is like a magical device that can take the high pressure (voltage) from the big pipe and reduce it to a lower pressure suitable for your hose. In electrical terms, it takes the high voltage from your wall outlet and steps it down to a safer, lower voltage for your devices.

#### Advanced Explanation

A transformer is an electrical device that transfers electrical energy between two or more circuits through electromagnetic induction. It consists of two coils of wire, known as

the primary and secondary windings, which are wound around a core made of ferromagnetic material. When an alternating current (AC) flows through the primary winding, it creates a varying magnetic field in the core, which induces a voltage in the secondary winding. The ratio of the number of turns in the primary winding to the number of turns in the secondary winding determines the voltage transformation ratio. For example, if the primary winding has 120 turns and the secondary winding has 12 turns, the transformer will step down the voltage by a factor of 10, converting 120 V AC to 12 V AC. This principle is fundamental in power distribution and in the design of many electronic devices.

#### 6.4.7 Common Visual Indicator

#### T6D07

Which of the following is commonly used as a visual indicator?

- 1. **LED**
- 2. FET
- 3. Zener diode
- 4. Bipolar transistor

An LED (Light Emitting Diode) is a semiconductor device that emits light when an electric current passes through it. It is widely used as a visual indicator in various electronic devices due to its efficiency, durability, and low power consumption. The other options, FET (Field-Effect Transistor), Zener diode, and Bipolar transistor, are not typically used for visual indication.

# 6.4.8 Resonant Circuit Components

#### T6D08

Which of the following is combined with an inductor to make a resonant circuit?

- 1. Resistor
- 2. Zener diode
- 3. Potentiometer
- 4. Capacitor

A resonant circuit is formed by combining an inductor with a capacitor. This combination allows the circuit to resonate at a specific frequency, which is determined by the values of the inductor and capacitor. The other components listed (resistor, Zener diode, and potentiometer) do not contribute to the resonance in the same way.

### 6.4.9 Device Combining Semiconductors and Components

#### T6D09

What is the name of a device that combines several semiconductors and other components into one package?

- 1. Transducer
- 2. Multi-pole relay
- 3. Integrated circuit
- 4. Transformer

An integrated circuit (IC) is a compact device that combines multiple semiconductors and other electronic components into a single package. This allows for complex electronic functions to be performed in a small, efficient, and reliable manner. ICs are fundamental in modern electronics, found in everything from computers to smartphones.

# 6.4.10 Function of Component 2 in Figure T-1

#### T6D10

What is the function of component 2 in figure T-1?

- 1. Give off light when current flows through it
- 2. Supply electrical energy
- 3. Control the flow of current
- 4. Convert electrical energy into radio waves

The question asks about the function of a specific component labeled as 2 in figure T-1. The correct answer is that it controls the flow of current. This is a straightforward question that does not require additional explanation.

#### 6.4.11 Resonant or Tuned Circuit

#### T6D11

Which of the following is a resonant or tuned circuit?

- 1. An inductor and a capacitor in series or parallel
- 2. A linear voltage regulator
- 3. A resistor circuit used for reducing standing wave ratio
- 4. A circuit designed to provide high-fidelity audio

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

A resonant or tuned circuit is like a musical instrument that vibrates at a specific frequency. Just as a guitar string vibrates at a particular pitch, a circuit with an inductor and a capacitor can resonate at a specific frequency. This is why option A is the correct answer.

A resonant circuit, also known as a tuned circuit, consists of an inductor (L) and a capacitor (C) connected either in series or parallel. The circuit resonates at a specific frequency, known as the resonant frequency, which is determined by the values of L and C. The resonant frequency  $f_0$  is given by the formula:

$$f_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{LC}}$$

At this frequency, the impedance of the circuit is either minimized (in series) or maximized (in parallel), allowing the circuit to selectively pass or block signals at that frequency. This property is widely used in radio frequency (RF) applications for tuning and filtering signals.

# Chapter 7 PRACTICAL CIRCUITS

# 7.1 Signal Essentials

## 7.1.1 Receiver Signal Detection Ability

## T7A01

Which term describes the ability of a receiver to detect the presence of a signal?

- 1. Linearity
- 2. Sensitivity
- 3. Selectivity
- 4. Total Harmonic Distortion

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to hear a whisper in a noisy room. The better your ears are at picking up that whisper, the more sensitive they are. Similarly, in radio technology, sensitivity refers to how well a receiver can detect a weak signal amidst noise.

## **Advanced Explanation**

Sensitivity in radio receivers is a measure of the minimum signal strength that the receiver can detect. It is typically expressed in microvolts ( $\mu$  V) or decibels relative to one milliwatt (dBm). A receiver with high sensitivity can detect weaker signals, which is crucial for long-distance communication or in environments with high noise levels. Sensitivity is influenced by factors such as the receiver's noise figure, bandwidth, and the quality of its components.

# 7.1.2 Understanding a Transceiver

## T7A02

What is a transceiver?

- 1. A device that combines a receiver and transmitter
- 2. A device for matching feed line impedance to 50 ohms
- 3. A device for automatically sending and decoding Morse code
- 4. A device for converting receiver and transmitter frequencies to another band

A transceiver is a device that combines both a receiver and a transmitter into a single unit. This allows for both sending and receiving signals, which is essential in many communication systems. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{A}$ .

## 7.1.3 Frequency Conversion Devices

## T7A03

Which of the following is used to convert a signal from one frequency to another?

- 1. Phase splitter
- 2. Mixer
- 3. Inverter
- 4. Amplifier

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a radio that can only listen to one station at a time. To listen to a different station, you need to change the frequency. A mixer is like the magic button on your radio that helps you switch from one frequency to another. It takes the signal from one frequency and converts it to a different frequency so you can tune in to your favorite station.

## **Advanced Explanation**

A mixer is a crucial component in radio frequency (RF) systems that performs frequency conversion. It takes two input signals—typically a local oscillator (LO) signal and a radio frequency (RF) signal—and produces an output signal at a frequency that is the sum or difference of the input frequencies. This process is known as heterodyning. The mixer is essential in superheterodyne receivers, where it converts the incoming RF signal to an intermediate frequency (IF) for easier processing and filtering. The correct answer is **B**, as the mixer is specifically designed for frequency conversion.

# 7.1.4 Receiver Signal Discrimination Ability

#### T7A04

Which term describes the ability of a receiver to discriminate between multiple signals?

- 1. Discrimination ratio
- 2. Sensitivity
- 3. Selectivity
- 4. Harmonic distortion

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're at a party with multiple conversations happening at once. Your ability to focus on one conversation while ignoring the others is similar to a receiver's ability to pick out one signal from many. This ability is called **selectivity**.

## **Advanced Explanation**

Selectivity in radio receivers refers to the ability to distinguish between signals of different frequencies. It is a crucial parameter because it determines how well a receiver can isolate a desired signal from other signals that may be present on nearby frequencies. Selectivity is often achieved through the use of filters that allow the desired frequency to pass while attenuating others. High selectivity is essential in crowded frequency bands to avoid interference from adjacent channels.

## 7.1.5 Circuit Generating a Specific Frequency Signal

## T7A05

What is the name of a circuit that generates a signal at a specific frequency?

- 1. Reactance modulator
- 2. Phase modulator
- 3. Low-pass filter
- 4. Oscillator

An oscillator is a circuit that generates a periodic signal at a specific frequency. It is commonly used in radio transmitters to produce the carrier wave. The other options, such as reactance modulator, phase modulator, and low-pass filter, are not designed to generate signals at specific frequencies.

## 7.1.6 Device for RF Band Conversion

## T7A06

What device converts the RF input and output of a transceiver to another band?

- 1. High-pass filter
- 2. Low-pass filter
- 3. Transverter
- 4. Phase converter

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a radio that only works on one frequency band, but you want to talk on a different band. A transverter is like a magical translator that takes the signals from your radio and converts them to the new band you want to use. It's like changing the channel on your TV to watch a different show!

## **Advanced Explanation**

A transverter is a device used in radio communications to convert the frequency of a transceiver's RF input and output to another band. This is particularly useful when a transceiver is designed to operate on a specific frequency range, but the operator wishes to communicate on a different band. The transverter typically consists of a mixer, local oscillator, and filters to achieve the frequency conversion. For example, if a transceiver

operates on the 2-meter band (144-148 MHz) and the operator wants to communicate on the 70-centimeter band (420-450 MHz), the transverter will shift the frequency accordingly. This allows for greater flexibility in communication without needing multiple transceivers.

## 7.1.7 Function of a Transceiver's PTT Input

## T7A07

What is the function of a transceiver's PTT input?

- 1. Input for a key used to send CW
- 2. Switches transceiver from receive to transmit when grounded
- 3. Provides a transmit tuning tone when grounded
- 4. Input for a preamplifier tuning tone

The PTT (Push-To-Talk) input on a transceiver is a simple yet crucial feature. When grounded, it switches the transceiver from receive mode to transmit mode, allowing the operator to communicate. This is a fundamental function in radio communication, ensuring that the transceiver only transmits when the operator intends to do so.

## 7.1.8 Combining Speech with an RF Carrier Signal

## T7A08

Which of the following describes combining speech with an RF carrier signal?

- 1. Impedance matching
- 2. Oscillation
- 3. Modulation
- 4. Low-pass filtering

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you want to send your voice over a radio wave. The radio wave is like a fast-moving train, and your voice is like a passenger. To get your voice onto the train, you need to modulate it—essentially, you're combining your voice with the radio wave so it can travel long distances. This process is called modulation.

## Advanced Explanation

Modulation is the process of varying one or more properties of a periodic waveform, called the carrier signal, with a modulating signal that typically contains information to be transmitted. In this case, the carrier signal is the RF (Radio Frequency) signal, and the modulating signal is the speech. There are different types of modulation, such as Amplitude Modulation (AM) and Frequency Modulation (FM), each with its own advantages and disadvantages. The key concept here is that modulation allows the transmission of information (speech) over a carrier wave (RF signal) efficiently.

# 7.1.9 Function of the SSB/CW-FM Switch on a VHF Power Amplifier

## T7A09

What is the function of the SSB/CW-FM switch on a VHF power amplifier?

- 1. Change the mode of the transmitted signal
- 2. Set the amplifier for proper operation in the selected mode
- 3. Change the frequency range of the amplifier to operate in the proper segment of the band
- 4. Reduce the received signal noise

#### Explanation

The SSB/CW-FM switch on a VHF power amplifier is used to configure the amplifier to operate correctly in the selected mode (SSB, CW, or FM). It does not change the mode of the transmitted signal, alter the frequency range, or reduce noise. Instead, it ensures the amplifier is optimized for the specific mode being used.

## 7.1.10 Device to Increase Transmitted Power

## T7A10

What device increases the transmitted output power from a transceiver?

- 1. A voltage divider
- 2. An RF power amplifier
- 3. An impedance network
- 4. All these choices are correct

## **Explanation**

An RF power amplifier is specifically designed to increase the power of a radio frequency signal before it is transmitted. This is essential for ensuring that the signal can travel the necessary distance to reach its destination. A voltage divider reduces voltage, and an impedance network is used to match impedances, not to increase power. Therefore, the correct answer is **B**.

# 7.1.11 RF Preamplifier Installation Location

#### T7A11

Where is an RF preamplifier installed?

- 1. Between the antenna and receiver
- 2. At the output of the transmitter power amplifier
- 3. Between the transmitter and the antenna tuner
- 4. At the output of the receiver audio amplifier

The RF preamplifier is installed between the antenna and the receiver to amplify weak signals received by the antenna before they are processed by the receiver. This helps in improving the signal-to-noise ratio and overall reception quality.

# 7.2 Radio Troubleshooting Essentials

## 7.2.1 Handling Over-Deviation in FM Transceivers

## T7B01

What can you do if you are told your FM handheld or mobile transceiver is over-deviating?

- 1. Talk louder into the microphone
- 2. Let the transceiver cool off
- 3. Change to a higher power level
- 4. Talk farther away from the microphone

## Explanation

Over-deviation in FM transceivers occurs when the signal's frequency deviation exceeds the allowed limit, which can cause interference and distortion. To address this, you should reduce the input signal's strength by talking farther away from the microphone. This decreases the modulation level, bringing it back within the acceptable range.

# 7.2.2 Unintentional Reception of Amateur Radio Signals

## T7B02

What would cause a broadcast AM or FM radio to receive an amateur radio transmission unintentionally?

- 1. The receiver is unable to reject strong signals outside the AM or FM band
- 2. The microphone gain of the transmitter is turned up too high
- 3. The audio amplifier of the transmitter is overloaded
- 4. The deviation of an FM transmitter is set too low

## Explanation

Broadcast AM and FM radios are designed to receive signals within specific frequency bands. However, if an amateur radio transmission is strong enough and close in frequency to the broadcast band, the receiver might not be able to reject it effectively. This is because the receiver's filtering may not be sufficient to block out strong signals that are just outside the intended frequency range. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{A}$ , as it directly addresses the receiver's inability to reject strong signals outside the AM or FM band.

## 7.2.3 Radio Frequency Interference Causes

## T7B03

Which of the following can cause radio frequency interference?

- 1. Fundamental overload
- 2. Harmonics
- 3. Spurious emissions
- 4. All these choices are correct

## Explanation

Radio frequency interference (RFI) can be caused by various factors, including fundamental overload, harmonics, and spurious emissions. Fundamental overload occurs when a receiver is overwhelmed by a strong signal, harmonics are multiples of the fundamental frequency that can interfere with other signals, and spurious emissions are unwanted signals emitted by a transmitter. Therefore, all the listed choices are correct causes of RFI.

## 7.2.4 Curing Distorted Audio from RF Current

#### T7B04

Which of the following could you use to cure distorted audio caused by RF current on the shield of a microphone cable?

- 1. Band-pass filter
- 2. Low-pass filter
- 3. Preamplifier
- 4. Ferrite choke

#### Intuitive Explanation

Imagine your microphone cable is like a garden hose, and RF current is like water leaking out where it shouldn't. This leakage causes the audio to sound distorted, like static on a radio. A ferrite choke acts like a clamp on the hose, stopping the leak and cleaning up the sound.

## **Advanced Explanation**

RF current on the shield of a microphone cable can induce unwanted noise into the audio signal, leading to distortion. A ferrite choke is a passive device that suppresses high-frequency noise by absorbing RF energy. It works by increasing the impedance of the cable at RF frequencies, effectively blocking the RF current from entering the audio circuit. This is a common and effective solution for mitigating RF interference in audio equipment.

## 7.2.5 Fundamental Overload Reduction

## T7B05

How can fundamental overload of a non-amateur radio or TV receiver by an amateur signal be reduced or eliminated?

- 1. Block the amateur signal with a filter at the antenna input of the affected receiver
- 2. Block the interfering signal with a filter on the amateur transmitter
- 3. Switch the transmitter from FM to SSB
- 4. Switch the transmitter to a narrow-band mode

## Explanation

Fundamental overload occurs when a strong amateur radio signal overwhelms a non-amateur receiver, causing interference. The most effective way to mitigate this is by placing a filter at the antenna input of the affected receiver. This filter blocks the amateur signal before it enters the receiver, preventing overload. Options B, C, and D involve modifying the transmitter, which does not directly address the issue at the receiver.

# 7.2.6 Handling Interference Complaints

## T7B06

Which of the following actions should you take if a neighbor tells you that your station's transmissions are interfering with their radio or TV reception?

- 1. Make sure that your station is functioning properly and that it does not cause interference to your own radio or television when it is tuned to the same channel
- 2. Immediately turn off your transmitter and contact the nearest FCC office for assistance
- 3. Install a harmonic doubler on the output of your transmitter and tune it until the interference is eliminated
- 4. All these choices are correct

If a neighbor reports interference from your station, the first step is to ensure your equipment is functioning correctly and not causing interference to your own devices. This is a practical and immediate action to identify and potentially resolve the issue.

## 7.2.7 Reducing VHF Transceiver Overload

## T7B07

Which of the following can reduce overload of a VHF transceiver by a nearby commercial FM station?

- 1. Installing an RF preamplifier
- 2. Using double-shielded coaxial cable
- 3. Installing bypass capacitors on the microphone cable
- 4. Installing a band-reject filter

## Explanation

When a VHF transceiver is overloaded by a nearby commercial FM station, the issue is typically due to strong signals from the FM station interfering with the transceiver's operation. A band-reject filter, also known as a notch filter, can be installed to attenuate the specific frequency range of the FM station, thereby reducing the interference and preventing overload. This is the most effective solution among the given options.

Installing an RF preamplifier (Option A) would amplify all incoming signals, including the unwanted FM station, making the problem worse. Using double-shielded coaxial cable (Option B) can reduce external interference but is not effective against strong nearby signals. Installing bypass capacitors on the microphone cable (Option C) is unrelated to RF interference and would not address the issue.

# 7.2.8 Handling Harmful Interference from a Neighbor's Home

## T7B08

What should you do if something in a neighbor's home is causing harmful interference to your amateur station?

- 1. Work with your neighbor to identify the offending device
- 2. Politely inform your neighbor that FCC rules prohibit the use of devices that cause interference
- 3. Make sure your station meets the standards of good amateur practice
- 4. All these choices are correct

When dealing with harmful interference from a neighbor's device, it is important to approach the situation diplomatically and ensure that your own station is operating within the standards of good amateur practice. The correct answer encompasses all the necessary steps to address the issue effectively.

## 7.2.9 Resolving Cable TV Interference

## T7B09

What should be the first step to resolve non-fiber optic cable TV interference caused by your amateur radio transmission?

- 1. Add a low-pass filter to the TV antenna input
- 2. Add a high-pass filter to the TV antenna input
- 3. Add a preamplifier to the TV antenna input
- 4. Be sure all TV feed line coaxial connectors are installed properly

## Explanation

The first step in resolving interference issues is to ensure that all connections are properly installed. Loose or improperly installed coaxial connectors can lead to signal leakage and interference. Once the connections are verified, additional measures like filters or amplifiers can be considered if necessary.

## 7.2.10 FM Repeater Audio Distortion

## T7B10

What might be a problem if you receive a report that your audio signal through an FM repeater is distorted or unintelligible?

- 1. Your transmitter is slightly off frequency
- 2. Your batteries are running low
- 3. You are in a bad location
- 4. All these choices are correct

## Explanation

If your audio signal through an FM repeater is reported as distorted or unintelligible, it could be due to several reasons. Your transmitter being slightly off frequency can cause distortion. Low batteries might lead to insufficient power, affecting signal quality. Additionally, being in a bad location can result in poor signal reception. Therefore, all the provided choices are correct.

# 7.2.11 RF Feedback Symptoms

#### T7B11

What is a symptom of RF feedback in a transmitter or transceiver?

- 1. Excessive SWR at the antenna connection
- 2. The transmitter will not stay on the desired frequency
- 3. Reports of garbled, distorted, or unintelligible voice transmissions
- 4. Frequent blowing of power supply fuses

## **Explanation**

RF feedback in a transmitter or transceiver can cause interference with the transmitted signal, leading to garbled, distorted, or unintelligible voice transmissions. This occurs because the feedback loop causes the signal to interfere with itself, degrading the quality of the transmission. The other options listed are not directly related to RF feedback.

# 7.3 Test Equipment and Antenna Basics

## 7.3.1 Dummy Load Purpose

## T7C01

What is the primary purpose of a dummy load?

- 1. To prevent transmitting signals over the air when making tests
- 2. To prevent over-modulation of a transmitter
- 3. To improve the efficiency of an antenna
- 4. To improve the signal-to-noise ratio of a receiver

A dummy load is used to absorb the RF energy from a transmitter during testing, ensuring that no signals are broadcasted over the air. This is crucial for safe and compliant testing of radio equipment.

## 7.3.2 Determining Antenna Resonance

## T7C02

Which of the following is used to determine if an antenna is resonant at the desired operating frequency?

- 1. A VTVM
- 2. An antenna analyzer
- 3. A Q meter
- 4. A frequency counter

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of an antenna like a musical instrument. Just as a guitar string needs to be tuned to the right pitch to sound good, an antenna needs to be tuned to the right frequency to work efficiently. An antenna analyzer is like a tuner for your antenna, helping you check if it's resonating at the desired frequency.

## Advanced Explanation

An antenna analyzer is a specialized tool used to measure the impedance and resonance of an antenna. Resonance occurs when the antenna's inductive and capacitive reactances cancel each other out, resulting in a purely resistive impedance. This is crucial for

efficient power transfer from the transmitter to the antenna. The analyzer provides real-time feedback on the antenna's performance, allowing adjustments to be made to achieve optimal resonance at the desired operating frequency. Other tools like VTVMs, Q meters, and frequency counters do not provide the specific measurements needed to determine antenna resonance.

## 7.3.3 Dummy Load Composition

#### T7C03

What does a dummy load consist of?

- 1. A high-gain amplifier and a TR switch
- 2. A non-inductive resistor mounted on a heat sink
- 3. A low-voltage power supply and a DC relay
- 4. A 50-ohm reactance used to terminate a transmission line

A dummy load is essentially a device that simulates an antenna without radiating any signal. It is used to test transmitters safely. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{B}$ , which describes a non-inductive resistor mounted on a heat sink. This setup ensures that the resistor can dissipate the power generated by the transmitter without causing interference.

## 7.3.4 SWR Meter and Impedance Match

## T7C04

What reading on an SWR meter indicates a perfect impedance match between the antenna and the feed line?

- 1. 50:50
- 2. Zero
- 3. **1:1**
- 4. Full Scale

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

An SWR (Standing Wave Ratio) meter measures how well the antenna and the feed line are matched in terms of impedance. Think of it like a dance between the antenna and the feed line. If they are perfectly in sync, the SWR meter will show a 1:1 ratio. This means there's no mismatch, and the signal is being transmitted efficiently without any reflections.

## **Advanced Explanation**

The SWR is a measure of the impedance match between the antenna and the feed line. When the impedance of the antenna matches the impedance of the feed line, there is no reflection of the signal, and the SWR is 1:1. This is the ideal condition for maximum power transfer. If the SWR is higher than 1:1, it indicates a mismatch, which can lead to signal loss and potential damage to the transmitter. The correct answer, therefore, is 1:1, as it signifies a perfect impedance match.

## 7.3.5 Output Power Reduction in Solid-State Transmitters

## T7C05

Why do most solid-state transmitters reduce output power as SWR increases beyond a certain level?

- 1. To protect the output amplifier transistors
- 2. To comply with FCC rules on spectral purity
- 3. Because power supplies cannot supply enough current at high SWR
- 4. To lower the SWR on the transmission line

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine your transmitter is like a car engine. If the road gets too bumpy (high SWR), the engine (transmitter) might get damaged. To avoid this, the car (transmitter) slows down (reduces power) to protect the engine (transistor).

## Advanced Explanation

Solid-state transmitters are designed to protect their output amplifier transistors from damage caused by high Standing Wave Ratio (SWR). When SWR increases, it indicates a mismatch between the transmitter and the antenna, leading to reflected power. This reflected power can cause excessive heat and stress on the transistors, potentially damaging them. To prevent this, the transmitter automatically reduces its output power, thereby protecting the transistors from overheating and failure. This is a built-in safety mechanism to ensure the longevity and reliability of the transmitter.

## 7.3.6 SWR Reading Interpretation

## T7C06

What does an SWR reading of 4:1 indicate?

- 1. Loss of -4 dB
- 2. Good impedance match
- 3. Gain of +4 dB
- 4. Impedance mismatch

An SWR (Standing Wave Ratio) reading of 4:1 indicates an impedance mismatch between the transmitter and the antenna. This means that not all the power from the transmitter is being efficiently transferred to the antenna, leading to reflected power and potential damage to the transmitter if not corrected.

## 7.3.7 Power Loss in Feed Lines

## T7C07

What happens to power lost in a feed line?

- 1. It increases the SWR
- 2. It is radiated as harmonics
- 3. It is converted into heat
- 4. It distorts the signal

When power is lost in a feed line, it is primarily due to resistance in the conductors and dielectric losses. This lost energy is converted into heat, which is why the correct answer is **C**. This is a fundamental concept in understanding the efficiency of transmission lines in radio systems.

## 7.3.8 Determining SWR with Instruments

## T7C08

Which instrument can be used to determine SWR?

- 1. Voltmeter
- 2. Ohmmeter
- 3. Iambic pentameter
- 4. Directional wattmeter

## Explanation

The Standing Wave Ratio (SWR) is a measure of how well the impedance of the antenna matches the impedance of the transmission line. A directional wattmeter is specifically designed to measure the forward and reflected power in a transmission line, which can then be used to calculate the SWR. Other instruments like voltmeters and ohmmeters do not provide the necessary measurements for determining SWR. The Iambic pentameter is a poetic meter and unrelated to radio technology.

## 7.3.9 Common Causes of Coaxial Cable Failure

#### T7C09

Which of the following causes failure of coaxial cables?

- 1. Moisture contamination
- 2. Solder flux contamination
- 3. Rapid fluctuation in transmitter output power
- 4. Operation at 100% duty cycle for an extended period

## **Explanation**

Coaxial cables are widely used in radio technology for transmitting signals. One of the most common causes of coaxial cable failure is moisture contamination. When moisture seeps into the cable, it can degrade the dielectric material inside, leading to signal loss or complete failure. This is why it's crucial to ensure that coaxial cables are properly sealed and protected from environmental factors like rain or humidity.

## 7.3.10 UV Resistance in Coaxial Cable Jackets

## T7C10

Why should the outer jacket of coaxial cable be resistant to ultraviolet light?

- 1. Ultraviolet resistant jackets prevent harmonic radiation
- 2. Ultraviolet light can increase losses in the cable's jacket
- 3. Ultraviolet and RF signals can mix, causing interference
- 4. Ultraviolet light can damage the jacket and allow water to enter the cable

The outer jacket of coaxial cable is exposed to environmental factors, including sunlight. Ultraviolet (UV) light can degrade materials over time, leading to cracks or breaks in the jacket. If the jacket is compromised, moisture can enter the cable, causing signal loss or even permanent damage. Therefore, UV resistance is crucial to ensure the longevity and reliability of the cable.

# 7.3.11 Disadvantages of Air Core Coaxial Cable

## T7C11

What is a disadvantage of air core coaxial cable when compared to foam or solid dielectric types?

- 1. It has more loss per foot
- 2. It cannot be used for VHF or UHF antennas
- 3. It requires special techniques to prevent moisture in the cable
- 4. It cannot be used at below freezing temperatures

Air core coaxial cables, unlike foam or solid dielectric types, are more susceptible to moisture ingress. This necessitates the use of special techniques to prevent moisture from entering the cable, which can degrade performance and lead to signal loss. The other options are incorrect as air core coaxial cables do not inherently have more loss per foot, can be used for VHF or UHF antennas, and can be used at below freezing temperatures.

# 7.4 Measuring Instruments in Electronics

## 7.4.1 Measuring Electric Potential

## T7D01

Which instrument would you use to measure electric potential?

- 1. An ammeter
- 2. A voltmeter
- 3. A wavemeter
- 4. An ohmmeter

To measure electric potential, you would use a voltmeter. Electric potential is measured in volts, and a voltmeter is specifically designed to measure this quantity. An ammeter measures current, a wavemeter measures wavelength, and an ohmmeter measures resistance. Therefore, the correct answer is  $\bf B$ .

## 7.4.2 Voltmeter Connection for Voltage Measurement

## T7D02

How is a voltmeter connected to a component to measure applied voltage?

- 1. In series
- 2. In parallel
- 3. In quadrature
- 4. In phase

To measure the voltage across a component, a voltmeter must be connected in parallel with that component. This ensures that the voltmeter measures the potential difference across the component without altering the circuit's current flow. Connecting it in series would disrupt the circuit, while quadrature and phase are irrelevant in this context.

# 7.4.3 Multimeter Current Measurement Configuration

## T7D03

When configured to measure current, how is a multimeter connected to a component?

- 1. In series
- 2. In parallel
- 3. In quadrature
- 4. In phase

To measure current, a multimeter must be connected in series with the component. This allows the current to flow through the multimeter, enabling it to measure the current accurately. Connecting it in parallel would measure voltage instead, and the other options are not relevant to current measurement.

## 7.4.4 Instrument for Measuring Electric Current

## T7D04

Which instrument is used to measure electric current?

- 1. An ohmmeter
- 2. An electrometer
- 3. A voltmeter
- 4. An ammeter

An ammeter is the instrument specifically designed to measure electric current. It is connected in series with the circuit to measure the flow of current. The other instruments listed have different purposes: an ohmmeter measures resistance, an electrometer measures electric charge, and a voltmeter measures voltage.

## 7.4.5 Damage to a Multimeter

#### T7D06

Which of the following can damage a multimeter?

- 1. Attempting to measure resistance using the voltage setting
- 2. Failing to connect one of the probes to ground
- 3. Attempting to measure voltage when using the resistance setting
- 4. Not allowing it to warm up properly

#### Intuitive Explanation

Think of a multimeter like a Swiss Army knife for electrical measurements. Each setting is like a different tool on the knife. If you try to use the wrong tool for the job, you might break it. For example, using the resistance setting to measure voltage is like trying to cut a steak with a screwdriver—it's not going to end well for the screwdriver!

## **Advanced Explanation**

Multimeters are designed to handle specific types of measurements within certain ranges. The resistance setting on a multimeter typically applies a small voltage to the circuit to measure resistance. If you attempt to measure voltage while in the resistance setting, the multimeter may be exposed to a much higher voltage than it is designed to handle, potentially damaging the internal components. This is why it is crucial to ensure the multimeter is set to the correct measurement type before taking any readings.

## 7.4.6 Multimeter Measurements

## T7D07

Which of the following measurements are made using a multimeter?

- 1. Signal strength and noise
- 2. Impedance and reactance
- 3. Voltage and resistance
- 4. All these choices are correct

A multimeter is a versatile tool commonly used to measure electrical properties. The correct answer is **C**, as multimeters are primarily designed to measure voltage and resistance. While some advanced multimeters can measure other properties, the basic function includes these two measurements.

## 7.4.7 Types of Solder for Radio and Electronic Applications

## T7D08

Which of the following types of solder should not be used for radio and electronic applications?

- 1. Acid-core solder
- 2. Lead-tin solder
- 3. Rosin-core solder
- 4. Tin-copper solder

## Intuitive Explanation

When working with electronics, you want to use solder that won't damage your components. Acid-core solder is like using a strong cleaning agent on a delicate piece of art—it's too harsh and can cause corrosion. That's why it's a no-go for radio and electronic applications.

#### Advanced Explanation

Acid-core solder contains a flux that is highly corrosive, which is suitable for plumbing but detrimental to electronic components. The acid can cause long-term damage by corroding the metal traces on circuit boards and the leads of components. In contrast, rosin-core solder is specifically designed for electronics, as its flux is non-corrosive and helps ensure a clean, reliable connection. Lead-tin and tin-copper solders are also commonly used in electronics, depending on the specific requirements of the application.

## 7.4.8 Cold Tin-Lead Solder Joint Appearance

## T7D09

What is the characteristic appearance of a cold tin-lead solder joint?

- 1. Dark black spots
- 2. A bright or shiny surface
- 3. A rough or lumpy surface
- 4. Excessive solder

A cold solder joint occurs when the solder does not melt completely or cools too quickly, resulting in a poor electrical connection. The characteristic appearance of such a joint is a rough or lumpy surface, which indicates that the solder did not flow properly. This is why option C is the correct answer.

## 7.4.9 Ohmmeter Reading Across a Discharged Capacitor

#### T7D10

What reading indicates that an ohmmeter is connected across a large, discharged capacitor?

- 1. Increasing resistance with time
- 2. Decreasing resistance with time
- 3. Steady full-scale reading
- 4. Alternating between open and short circuit

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a big empty bucket (the capacitor) and you start filling it with water (charge). At first, the bucket is empty, so it's easy to pour water in. As the bucket fills up, it becomes harder to add more water. Similarly, when you connect an ohmmeter to a discharged capacitor, it initially shows a low resistance because the capacitor is empty and ready to accept charge. As the capacitor charges up, the resistance increases because it's getting full and less willing to accept more charge.

## Advanced Explanation

When an ohmmeter is connected across a discharged capacitor, it applies a small voltage to the capacitor and measures the resulting current. Initially, the capacitor acts like a short circuit because it is discharged, and the current is high, indicating low resistance. As the capacitor charges, the current decreases, and the resistance appears to increase. This is because the capacitor is storing charge, and the voltage across it builds up, opposing the applied voltage from the ohmmeter. Therefore, the correct reading is an increasing resistance with time.

## 7.4.10 Precautions for Measuring In-Circuit Resistance

## T7D11

Which of the following precautions should be taken when measuring in-circuit resistance with an ohmmeter?

- 1. Ensure that the applied voltages are correct
- 2. Ensure that the circuit is not powered
- 3. Ensure that the circuit is grounded
- 4. Ensure that the circuit is operating at the correct frequency

## **Intuitive Explanation**

When using an ohmmeter to measure resistance in a circuit, it's crucial to ensure that the circuit is not powered. This is because an ohmmeter works by sending a small current through the circuit to measure resistance. If the circuit is powered, the external voltage can interfere with the ohmmeter's readings, leading to inaccurate results or even damaging the ohmmeter. Think of it like trying to measure the weight of a balloon while someone is blowing air into it—you won't get the correct measurement!

## **Advanced Explanation**

An ohmmeter measures resistance by applying a known voltage and measuring the resulting current through the circuit using Ohm's Law  $(R = \frac{V}{I})$ . If the circuit is powered, the external voltage can alter the current flowing through the circuit, leading to incorrect resistance readings. Additionally, the external voltage can cause excessive current to flow through the ohmmeter, potentially damaging its internal components. Therefore, it is essential to ensure that the circuit is not powered when measuring in-circuit resistance with an ohmmeter. This precaution helps maintain the accuracy of the measurement and protects the ohmmeter from damage.

# Chapter 8 SIGNALS AND EMISSIONS

## 8.1 Modulation Essentials

## 8.1.1 Forms of Amplitude Modulation

## T8A01

Which of the following is a form of amplitude modulation?

- 1. Spread spectrum
- 2. Packet radio
- 3. Single sideband
- 4. Phase shift keying (PSK)

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Amplitude modulation (AM) is like turning the volume knob on your radio up and down to send a message. Single sideband (SSB) is a special way of doing this where we only use one side of the signal, making it more efficient. The other options are like different ways of sending messages, but they don't involve turning the volume knob up and down.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

Amplitude modulation (AM) varies the amplitude of the carrier wave in proportion to the message signal. Single sideband (SSB) is a type of AM that suppresses one sideband and the carrier, leaving only one sideband. This makes SSB more efficient in terms of bandwidth and power. Spread spectrum, packet radio, and phase shift keying (PSK) are different modulation techniques that do not involve varying the amplitude of the carrier wave. Spread spectrum spreads the signal over a wide frequency band, packet radio transmits data in packets, and PSK varies the phase of the carrier wave to represent data.

## 8.1.2 Common Modulation for VHF Packet Radio

## T8A02

What type of modulation is commonly used for VHF packet radio transmissions?

- 1. FM or PM
- 2. SSB
- 3. AM
- 4. PSK

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of VHF packet radio like a conversation between two people. To make sure the message gets through clearly, you need a reliable way to send it. FM (Frequency Modulation) and PM (Phase Modulation) are like speaking in a steady, clear voice—they're great for keeping the message intact over short to medium distances. That's why they're commonly used for VHF packet radio transmissions.

## **Advanced Explanation**

VHF (Very High Frequency) packet radio typically operates in the 144-148 MHz range. FM and PM are preferred for VHF packet radio because they are robust against noise and interference, which is crucial for maintaining data integrity over these frequencies. FM modulates the frequency of the carrier wave, while PM modulates the phase. Both methods are effective for digital data transmission, ensuring that the signal remains clear and stable even in less-than-ideal conditions.

# 8.1.3 Long-Distance Voice Mode on VHF and UHF Bands

#### T8A03

Which type of voice mode is often used for long-distance (weak signal) contacts on the VHF and UHF bands?

- 1. FM
- 2. DRM
- 3. **SSB**
- 4. PM

## **Intuitive Explanation**

When you're trying to talk to someone far away on VHF or UHF bands, you need a mode that can cut through the noise and make your signal as clear as possible. Think of it like shouting across a noisy room—you want to use the most efficient way to get your message across. Single Sideband (SSB) is like a focused shout that uses less power and bandwidth, making it ideal for long-distance communication when signals are weak.

## **Advanced Explanation**

Single Sideband (SSB) is a modulation technique that transmits only one sideband of the carrier wave, either the upper or lower sideband, while suppressing the other sideband and the carrier itself. This results in a more efficient use of power and bandwidth compared to other modes like FM (Frequency Modulation) or PM (Phase Modulation). SSB is particularly effective for long-distance communication on VHF and UHF bands because it reduces the signal's susceptibility to noise and interference, allowing for clearer reception even when the signal is weak. Additionally, SSB requires less power to transmit over long distances, making it a preferred choice for weak signal contacts.

## 8.1.4 Common Modulation for VHF/UHF Voice Repeaters

## T8A04

Which type of modulation is commonly used for VHF and UHF voice repeaters?

- 1. AM
- 2. SSB
- 3. PSK
- 4. FM or PM

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to talk to your friend through a walkie-talkie. You want your voice to be clear and easy to understand, even if there's some noise around. FM (Frequency Modulation) and PM (Phase Modulation) are like the superheroes of modulation for this job. They make sure your voice comes through loud and clear, even in the noisy world of VHF (Very High Frequency) and UHF (Ultra High Frequency) bands. That's why they're the go-to choice for voice repeaters in these frequency ranges.

## **Advanced Explanation**

FM and PM are preferred for VHF and UHF voice repeaters due to their superior noise immunity compared to AM (Amplitude Modulation) and SSB (Single Sideband). FM modulates the frequency of the carrier wave, while PM modulates the phase. Both techniques are less susceptible to amplitude noise, which is common in these frequency bands. Additionally, FM and PM provide better signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) and are more efficient for voice communication, making them ideal for repeaters that need to relay clear and reliable voice signals over long distances.

## 8.1.5 Signal Bandwidth Comparison

## T8A05

Which of the following types of signal has the narrowest bandwidth?

- 1. FM voice
- 2. SSB voice
- 3. **CW**
- 4. Slow-scan TV

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're at a concert. FM voice is like a full band playing, taking up a lot of space. SSB voice is like a solo singer, taking up less space. Slow-scan TV is like a slideshow, taking up a bit more space than the singer. CW (Continuous Wave) is like a single note being played on a flute—it takes up the least space of all. So, CW has the narrowest bandwidth.

## **Advanced Explanation**

Bandwidth refers to the range of frequencies a signal occupies. FM voice typically uses a bandwidth of about 15 kHz, SSB voice uses about 3 kHz, Slow-scan TV uses about 3 kHz to 6 kHz, and CW uses a very narrow bandwidth, often less than 1 kHz. CW signals are simple, unmodulated carrier waves, which is why they occupy the least bandwidth. This makes CW ideal for long-distance communication, especially in crowded frequency bands.

# 8.1.6 Preferred Sideband for 10 Meter HF, VHF, and UHF SSB Communications

## T8A06

Which sideband is normally used for 10 meter HF, VHF, and UHF single-sideband communications?

- 1. Upper sideband
- 2. Lower sideband
- 3. Suppressed sideband
- 4. Inverted sideband

For 10 meter HF, VHF, and UHF single-sideband communications, the upper sideband (USB) is typically used. This is a standard practice in amateur radio to ensure consistency and compatibility across different bands and equipment.

# 8.1.7 Characteristics of Single Sideband (SSB) Compared to FM

## T8A07

What is a characteristic of single sideband (SSB) compared to FM?

- 1. SSB signals are easier to tune in correctly
- 2. SSB signals are less susceptible to interference
- 3. SSB signals have narrower bandwidth
- 4. All these choices are correct

## Explanation

Single Sideband (SSB) modulation is known for its efficient use of bandwidth compared to Frequency Modulation (FM). SSB transmits only one sideband and suppresses the carrier, which results in a narrower bandwidth. This is particularly advantageous in crowded frequency bands where spectrum efficiency is crucial. FM, on the other hand, uses a wider bandwidth due to its modulation technique, which spreads the signal over a larger frequency range. Therefore, the correct answer is that SSB signals have narrower bandwidth.

## 8.1.8 Bandwidth of a Single Sideband (SSB) Voice Signal

## T8A08

What is the approximate bandwidth of a typical single sideband (SSB) voice signal?

- 1. 1 kHz
- 2. **3** kHz
- 3. 6 kHz
- 4. 15 kHz

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're talking on a walkie-talkie. The sound of your voice gets converted into a radio signal, but instead of sending the entire signal, which would take up a lot of space, we only send one side of it. This is called Single Sideband (SSB). The bandwidth is like the width of the signal, and for a typical SSB voice signal, it's about 3 kHz. This is enough to carry the important parts of your voice without wasting space.

#### Advanced Explanation

Single Sideband (SSB) modulation is a technique used in radio communications to transmit voice signals efficiently. In SSB, only one sideband (either the upper or lower) is transmitted, along with the carrier signal suppressed. This reduces the bandwidth required for transmission. The bandwidth of a typical SSB voice signal is approximately 3 kHz. This is because the human voice contains frequencies primarily in the range of 300 Hz to 3 kHz. By transmitting only one sideband, the bandwidth is effectively halved

compared to double sideband (DSB) transmission, making SSB a more efficient use of the radio spectrum.

## 8.1.9 Bandwidth of a VHF Repeater FM Voice Signal

#### T8A09

What is the approximate bandwidth of a VHF repeater FM voice signal?

- 1. Less than 500 Hz
- 2. About 150 kHz
- 3. Between 10 and 15 kHz
- 4. Between 50 and 125 kHz

The bandwidth of a VHF repeater FM voice signal is typically between 10 and 15 kHz. This range is sufficient to carry the voice signal with good fidelity while efficiently using the available spectrum.

## 8.1.10 Bandwidth of AM Fast-Scan TV Transmissions

#### T8A10

What is the approximate bandwidth of AM fast-scan TV transmissions?

- 1. More than 10 MHz
- 2. About 6 MHz
- 3. About 3 MHz
- 4. About 1 MHz

#### Intuitive Explanation

Imagine you're watching an old-school TV show. The picture and sound are being sent to your TV through the airwaves. The amount of space these signals take up in the airwaves is called bandwidth. For AM fast-scan TV, this space is about 6 MHz. That's like a lane on a highway just for your TV show!

## Advanced Explanation

AM fast-scan TV transmissions use amplitude modulation (AM) to carry both video and audio signals. The bandwidth required for these transmissions is determined by the range of frequencies needed to accurately represent the video and audio information. For standard AM fast-scan TV, the bandwidth is approximately 6 MHz. This includes the video carrier, the audio carrier, and the sidebands that carry the actual information. The 6 MHz bandwidth ensures that the TV signal can carry enough detail for clear picture and sound.

## 8.1.11 Bandwidth for CW Signal Transmission

## T8A11

What is the approximate bandwidth required to transmit a CW signal?

- 1. 2.4 kHz
- 2. **150 Hz**
- 3. 1000 Hz
- 4. 15 kHz

## Intuitive Explanation

Imagine you're sending a message using a flashlight by turning it on and off in Morse code. The bandwidth is like the range of frequencies needed to send this simple on-off signal. Since CW (Continuous Wave) signals are just simple on-off keying, they don't need much bandwidth. Think of it as a narrow lane on a highway—just enough space for your signal to pass through without any extra room.

## **Advanced Explanation**

CW signals are generated by turning a carrier wave on and off, typically using Morse code. The bandwidth required for a CW signal is primarily determined by the keying speed, which is usually quite slow. The bandwidth can be approximated by the formula:

Bandwidth 
$$\approx \frac{1}{\text{Keying Speed}}$$

For typical CW keying speeds, the bandwidth is around 150 Hz. This narrow bandwidth allows for efficient use of the radio spectrum and minimizes interference with other signals.

# 8.1.12 Disadvantages of FM Compared to Single Sideband

## T8A12

Which of the following is a disadvantage of FM compared with single sideband?

- 1. Voice quality is poorer
- 2. Only one signal can be received at a time
- 3. FM signals are harder to tune
- 4. All these choices are correct

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're at a party where everyone is talking at the same time. FM is like having a loudspeaker that can only play one conversation at a time, while single sideband is like having multiple headphones that let you listen to different conversations simultaneously. FM's limitation is that it can only handle one signal at a time, making it less versatile in crowded environments.

## **Advanced Explanation**

Frequency Modulation (FM) and Single Sideband (SSB) are two different methods of transmitting radio signals. FM modulates the frequency of the carrier wave to encode the information, while SSB suppresses one sideband and the carrier to transmit the signal more efficiently. One of the key disadvantages of FM is its inability to handle multiple signals simultaneously on the same frequency, unlike SSB which can accommodate multiple signals by using different sidebands. This makes FM less efficient in scenarios where multiple transmissions need to be received concurrently.

## 8.2 Satellite Communications Basics

## 8.2.1 Satellite Beacon Telemetry Information

## T8B01

What telemetry information is typically transmitted by satellite beacons?

- 1. The signal strength of received signals
- 2. Time of day accurate to plus or minus 1/10 second
- 3. Health and status of the satellite
- 4. All these choices are correct

Satellite beacons are primarily used to transmit information about the health and status of the satellite. This helps ground stations monitor the satellite's condition and ensure it is functioning correctly. The other options, such as signal strength and precise time, are not typically the main focus of satellite beacon telemetry.

# 8.2.2 Impact of Excessive Effective Radiated Power on Satellite Uplink

## T8B02

What is the impact of using excessive effective radiated power on a satellite uplink?

- 1. Possibility of commanding the satellite to an improper mode
- 2. Blocking access by other users
- 3. Overloading the satellite batteries
- 4. Possibility of rebooting the satellite control computer

Using excessive effective radiated power (ERP) on a satellite uplink can cause significant interference, blocking access by other users. This is because the high power signal can dominate the satellite's receiver, making it difficult or impossible for other signals to be received and processed. This is a common issue in shared communication systems where multiple users rely on the same satellite for transmission.

## 8.2.3 Satellite Tracking Program Features

#### T8B03

Which of the following are provided by satellite tracking programs?

- 1. Maps showing the real-time position of the satellite track over Earth
- 2. The time, azimuth, and elevation of the start, maximum altitude, and end of a pass
- 3. The apparent frequency of the satellite transmission, including effects of Doppler shift
- 4. All these choices are correct

Satellite tracking programs are comprehensive tools that provide a variety of information to users. They offer real-time maps showing the satellite's position over Earth, detailed pass information including time, azimuth, and elevation, and even account for the Doppler shift in the satellite's transmission frequency. Therefore, all the listed features are indeed provided by these programs.

# 8.2.4 Common Modes of Transmission in Amateur Radio Satellites

## T8B04

What mode of transmission is commonly used by amateur radio satellites?

- 1. SSB
- 2. FM
- 3. CW/data
- 4. All these choices are correct

Amateur radio satellites commonly use a variety of transmission modes, including Single Sideband (SSB), Frequency Modulation (FM), and Continuous Wave/data (CW/data). Therefore, the correct answer is that all these choices are correct.

## 8.2.5 Satellite Beacon

## T8B05

What is a satellite beacon?

- 1. The primary transmit antenna on the satellite
- 2. An indicator light that shows where to point your antenna
- 3. A reflective surface on the satellite
- 4. A transmission from a satellite that contains status information

A satellite beacon is a transmission from a satellite that contains status information. This information is crucial for tracking the satellite and ensuring its proper operation. The other options describe different aspects of satellite technology but do not accurately define a satellite beacon.

## 8.2.6 Satellite Tracking Program Inputs

#### T8B06

Which of the following are inputs to a satellite tracking program?

- 1. The satellite transmitted power
- 2. The Keplerian elements
- 3. The last observed time of zero Doppler shift
- 4. All these choices are correct

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to track a friend's car using a GPS app. To know where the car is, you need some key information like its current location, speed, and direction. Similarly, a satellite tracking program needs specific data to predict where a satellite will be at any given time. The Keplerian elements are like the GPS coordinates for satellites—they provide the necessary orbital information to track them accurately.

## Advanced Explanation

The Keplerian elements are a set of six parameters that define the orbit of a satellite. These elements include the semi-major axis, eccentricity, inclination, right ascension of the ascending node, argument of periapsis, and mean anomaly. These parameters allow the tracking program to calculate the satellite's position and velocity at any point in time. The satellite's transmitted power and the last observed time of zero Doppler shift are not used as inputs for tracking; instead, they are related to signal reception and Doppler effect analysis, respectively. Therefore, the correct input for a satellite tracking program is the Keplerian elements.

# 8.2.7 Doppler Shift in Satellite Communications

## T8B07

What is Doppler shift in reference to satellite communications?

- 1. A change in the satellite orbit
- 2. A mode where the satellite receives signals on one band and transmits on another
- 3. An observed change in signal frequency caused by relative motion between the satellite and Earth station
- 4. A special digital communications mode for some satellites

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're standing by the side of a road, and a car is speeding towards you while honking its horn. As the car gets closer, the sound of the horn seems to get higher in pitch. Once the car passes you and moves away, the pitch of the horn seems to drop. This change in pitch is similar to what happens with radio signals in satellite communications

due to the Doppler shift. When a satellite is moving towards or away from an Earth station, the frequency of the signal changes slightly, just like the pitch of the car's horn.

## **Advanced Explanation**

The Doppler shift, or Doppler effect, is a phenomenon where the frequency of a wave changes for an observer moving relative to the wave source. In satellite communications, the relative motion between the satellite and the Earth station causes a shift in the frequency of the transmitted signal. If the satellite is moving towards the Earth station, the frequency increases (blue shift). Conversely, if the satellite is moving away, the frequency decreases (red shift). This effect is crucial for accurately receiving and interpreting signals in satellite communication systems, as it can impact the tuning and synchronization of the receiving equipment.

## 8.2.8 Satellite U/V Mode Operation

#### T8B08

What is meant by the statement that a satellite is operating in U/V mode?

- 1. The satellite uplink is in the 15 meter band and the downlink is in the 10 meter band
- 2. The satellite uplink is in the 70 centimeter band and the downlink is in the 2 meter band
- 3. The satellite operates using ultraviolet frequencies
- 4. The satellite frequencies are usually variable

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're sending a message to a satellite. The U/V mode is like a two-way street where you send your message on one lane (the 70 cm band) and the satellite replies on another lane (the 2 meter band). It's not about ultraviolet light or variable frequencies; it's just about the specific radio bands used for sending and receiving.

## **Advanced Explanation**

In satellite communications, the terms U and V refer to specific frequency bands. The U stands for the 70 centimeter band (430-440 MHz), which is commonly used for the uplink (transmission from Earth to the satellite). The V stands for the 2 meter band (144-146 MHz), which is typically used for the downlink (transmission from the satellite to Earth). This configuration is known as U/V mode. It is important to note that these bands are part of the amateur radio spectrum and are chosen for their propagation characteristics and availability for satellite use.

## 8.2.9 Spin Fading of Satellite Signals

## T8B09

What causes spin fading of satellite signals?

- 1. Circular polarized noise interference radiated from the sun
- 2. Rotation of the satellite and its antennas
- 3. Doppler shift of the received signal
- 4. Interfering signals within the satellite uplink band

## Intuitive Explanation

Imagine you're trying to catch a ball while spinning around in a chair. Sometimes the ball is easy to catch, and other times it's not because your hands are moving in and out of position. Similarly, when a satellite spins, its antennas rotate, causing the signal strength to fluctuate—this is called spin fading.

## Advanced Explanation

Spin fading occurs due to the rotation of the satellite and its antennas. As the satellite spins, the orientation of its antennas changes relative to the ground station. This rotation causes variations in the signal strength received on Earth, leading to periodic fading. The phenomenon is particularly noticeable in satellites that use linearly polarized antennas, as the polarization alignment between the satellite and the ground station changes continuously. Doppler shift and interference are not the primary causes of spin fading, although they can affect signal quality in other ways.

## 8.2.10 LEO Satellite Definition

#### T8B10

What is a LEO satellite?

- 1. A sun synchronous satellite
- 2. A highly elliptical orbit satellite
- 3. A satellite in low energy operation mode
- 4. A satellite in low earth orbit

A LEO satellite, or Low Earth Orbit satellite, is a satellite that orbits the Earth at altitudes typically ranging from 160 to 2,000 kilometers. These satellites are commonly used for various applications, including communication, Earth observation, and scientific research, due to their relatively close proximity to the Earth's surface.

## 8.2.11 Telemetry Reception from a Space Station

## T8B11

Who may receive telemetry from a space station?

- 1. Anyone
- 2. A licensed radio amateur with a transmitter equipped for interrogating the satellite
- 3. A licensed radio amateur who has been certified by the protocol developer
- 4. A licensed radio amateur who has registered for an access code from AMSAT

## **Explanation**

Telemetry from a space station is typically transmitted in a way that allows anyone with the appropriate receiving equipment to capture and decode the data. There are no restrictions on who can receive this telemetry, as it is often intended for public use and scientific purposes. Therefore, the correct answer is **Anyone**.

## 8.2.12 Determining Satellite Uplink Power

## T8B12

Which of the following is a way to determine whether your satellite uplink power is neither too low nor too high?

- 1. Check your signal strength report in the telemetry data
- 2. Listen for distortion on your downlink signal
- 3. Your signal strength on the downlink should be about the same as the beacon
- 4. All these choices are correct

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to talk to someone on a walkie-talkie. If you shout too loudly, the other person might hear you, but it could be distorted. If you whisper, they might not hear you at all. The same idea applies to satellite communication. You want your uplink power to be just right—not too loud and not too soft. One way to check this is by comparing your signal strength to the beacon, which is like a reference signal. If they match, you're good to go!

#### Advanced Explanation

In satellite communication, the uplink power must be carefully controlled to ensure effective communication without causing interference or signal degradation. The beacon signal is a constant reference signal transmitted by the satellite. By comparing the strength of your downlink signal to the beacon, you can gauge whether your uplink power is appropriate. If the downlink signal strength is similar to the beacon, it indicates that the uplink power is neither too low (which would result in a weak downlink signal) nor too high

(which could cause distortion or interference). This method provides a straightforward and reliable way to optimize uplink power.

## 8.3 Radio Basics Uncovered

## 8.3.1 Locating Noise Interference Sources

## T8C01

Which of the following methods is used to locate sources of noise interference or jamming?

- 1. Echolocation
- 2. Doppler radar
- 3. Radio direction finding
- 4. Phase locking

## Explanation

Radio direction finding (RDF) is a technique used to determine the direction from which a radio signal is being transmitted. This method is particularly useful for locating sources of noise interference or jamming. By using specialized equipment, such as directional antennas, the operator can pinpoint the origin of the interfering signal. This is a fundamental technique in radio communication and is widely used in both amateur and professional settings.

## 8.3.2 Hidden Transmitter Hunt Tools

## T8C02

Which of these items would be useful for a hidden transmitter hunt?

- 1. Calibrated SWR meter
- 2. A directional antenna
- 3. A calibrated noise bridge
- 4. All these choices are correct

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're playing a game of hide and seek, but instead of looking for a person, you're trying to find a hidden radio transmitter. To find it, you need something that can point you in the right direction. A directional antenna is like a compass that helps you zero in on the transmitter's location. The other tools listed, like the SWR meter and noise bridge, are more about tuning and measuring the radio itself, not finding it.

#### Advanced Explanation

In a hidden transmitter hunt, the goal is to locate a concealed radio transmitter. A directional antenna is crucial because it allows you to determine the direction of the

incoming signal. By rotating the antenna and observing the signal strength, you can triangulate the transmitter's position.

An SWR meter measures the standing wave ratio, which is important for ensuring your antenna is properly tuned, but it doesn't help in locating a transmitter. Similarly, a noise bridge is used for impedance matching and is not designed for direction finding. Therefore, the most useful tool for a hidden transmitter hunt is a directional antenna.

## 8.3.3 Operating Activity for Maximum Station Contact

#### T8C03

What operating activity involves contacting as many stations as possible during a specified period?

- 1. Simulated emergency exercises
- 2. Net operations
- 3. Public service events
- 4. Contesting

This question is straightforward and does not require an in-depth explanation. The correct answer is **D**: **Contesting**, which is an amateur radio activity where participants aim to contact as many stations as possible within a specific time frame. This activity is often competitive and involves various modes of communication, such as voice, Morse code, or digital modes.

## 8.3.4 Contest Contact Procedures

#### T8C04

Which of the following is good procedure when contacting another station in a contest?

- 1. Sign only the last two letters of your call if there are many other stations calling
- 2. Contact the station twice to be sure that you are in his log
- 3. Send only the minimum information needed for proper identification and the contest exchange
- 4. All these choices are correct

When participating in a contest, it is important to keep communications concise and efficient. The correct procedure is to send only the minimum information needed for proper identification and the contest exchange. This ensures that the contact is logged correctly without unnecessary repetition or confusion.

## 8.3.5 Grid Locator Definition

## T8C05

What is a grid locator?

- 1. A letter-number designator assigned to a geographic location
- 2. A letter-number designator assigned to an azimuth and elevation
- 3. An instrument for neutralizing a final amplifier
- 4. An instrument for radio direction finding

A grid locator is a simple yet effective way to pinpoint a specific geographic location using a combination of letters and numbers. This system is widely used in amateur radio to quickly and accurately describe a location.

## 8.3.6 Accessing IRLP Nodes Over the Air

## T8C06

How is over the air access to IRLP nodes accomplished?

- 1. By obtaining a password that is sent via voice to the node
- 2. By using DTMF signals
- 3. By entering the proper internet password
- 4. By using CTCSS tone codes

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of IRLP nodes as a special kind of radio that can connect to other radios over the internet. To access these nodes over the air, you need a way to knock on the door and say, Hey, let me in! Instead of using a key or a password, you use DTMF signals, which are like musical tones that the node recognizes as your way of asking for access.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

IRLP (Internet Radio Linking Project) nodes are devices that allow amateur radio operators to connect their radios over the internet. To access these nodes over the air, operators use DTMF (Dual-Tone Multi-Frequency) signals. These signals are combinations of two specific frequencies that correspond to the buttons on a telephone keypad. When you send the correct sequence of DTMF tones, the IRLP node recognizes it as a valid access request and allows you to connect. This method is secure and efficient, as it doesn't require voice passwords or internet credentials, which could be intercepted or misused.

## 8.3.7 Understanding Voice Over Internet Protocol (VoIP)

## T8C07

What is Voice Over Internet Protocol (VoIP)?

- 1. A set of rules specifying how to identify your station when linked over the internet to another station
- 2. A technique employed to "spot" DX stations via the internet
- 3. A technique for measuring the modulation quality of a transmitter using remote sites monitored via the internet
- 4. A method of delivering voice communications over the internet using digital techniques

VoIP, or Voice Over Internet Protocol, is a technology that allows voice communications to be transmitted over the internet using digital techniques. This method converts voice signals into digital data packets, which are then transmitted over the internet and reassembled at the receiving end. This technology is widely used in various applications, including internet telephony, video conferencing, and online gaming.

## 8.3.8 Internet Radio Linking Project (IRLP)

#### T8C08

What is the Internet Radio Linking Project (IRLP)?

- 1. A technique to connect amateur radio systems, such as repeaters, via the internet using Voice Over Internet Protocol (VoIP)
- 2. A system for providing access to websites via amateur radio
- 3. A system for informing amateurs in real time of the frequency of active DX stations
- 4. A technique for measuring signal strength of an amateur transmitter via the internet

The Internet Radio Linking Project (IRLP) is a method used to connect amateur radio systems, such as repeaters, over the internet using Voice Over Internet Protocol (VoIP). This allows amateur radio operators to communicate with each other over long distances by leveraging the internet infrastructure. The correct answer is **A**.

## 8.3.9 EchoLink Protocol for Repeater Transmission

## T8C09

Which of the following protocols enables an amateur station to transmit through a repeater without using a radio to initiate the transmission?

- 1. IRLP
- 2. D-STAR
- 3. DMR
- 4. EchoLink

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you want to talk to your friend through a loudspeaker system, but you don't have a microphone. Instead, you use your computer to send your voice directly to the loudspeaker. EchoLink works similarly—it allows you to connect to a repeater (the loudspeaker) using the internet, so you don't need a radio to start the conversation.

## **Advanced Explanation**

EchoLink is a VoIP (Voice over Internet Protocol) system designed for amateur radio operators. It allows users to connect to repeaters or other stations via the internet, by-passing the need for a physical radio to initiate the transmission. This is particularly useful for operators who may not have access to a radio but still want to participate in repeater communications. EchoLink uses a combination of software and internet connectivity to facilitate these transmissions, making it a versatile tool in the amateur radio community.

## 8.3.10 EchoLink System Requirements

#### T8C10

What is required before using the EchoLink system?

- 1. Complete the required EchoLink training
- 2. Purchase a license to use the EchoLink software
- 3. Register your call sign and provide proof of license
- 4. All these choices are correct

Before using the EchoLink system, you need to register your call sign and provide proof of your amateur radio license. This ensures that only licensed operators can use the system, maintaining its integrity and compliance with regulations.

## 8.3.11 Amateur Radio Station Connecting to the Internet

#### T8C11

What is an amateur radio station that connects other amateur stations to the internet?

- 1. A gateway
- 2. A repeater
- 3. A digipeater
- 4. A beacon

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a walkie-talkie, but you want to talk to someone who is far away, maybe even on the other side of the world. A gateway in amateur radio is like a magical bridge that connects your walkie-talkie to the internet, allowing you to communicate with people

who are not within the range of your radio. It's like turning your radio into a phone that can call anyone, anywhere!

## **Advanced Explanation**

In amateur radio, a gateway is a specialized station that interfaces between radio frequencies and the internet. It allows radio operators to connect to digital networks, such as the Internet Protocol (IP) networks, enabling communication beyond the typical range of radio waves. This is particularly useful for modes like D-STAR, DMR, and other digital protocols that rely on internet connectivity to extend their reach. The gateway acts as a translator, converting radio signals into data packets that can be transmitted over the internet and vice versa. This technology bridges the gap between traditional radio communication and modern digital networks, enhancing the capabilities of amateur radio operators.

## 8.4 Sailing Through Digital Waves

## 8.4.1 Digital Communications Modes

## T8D01

Which of the following is a digital communications mode?

- 1. Packet radio
- 2. IEEE 802.11
- 3. FT8
- 4. All these choices are correct

#### Intuitive Explanation

Digital communications modes are like different languages that computers use to talk to each other. Just like you can speak English, Spanish, or French, computers can use different modes like Packet radio, IEEE 802.11, or FT8 to communicate. The question is asking which of these are digital modes, and the answer is that all of them are!

## **Advanced Explanation**

Digital communications modes involve the transmission of data in digital form, as opposed to analog signals.

- Packet radio is a digital mode where data is broken into packets and transmitted over radio frequencies.
- IEEE 802.11 is a set of standards for implementing wireless local area network (WLAN) communication, commonly known as Wi-Fi, which is inherently digital.
- FT8 is a popular digital mode used in amateur radio for weak signal communication, designed for efficient and reliable data transmission.

All these modes are digital, making the correct answer that all the choices are correct.

## 8.4.2 Talkgroup on a DMR Repeater

#### T8D02

What is a "talkgroup" on a DMR repeater?

- 1. A group of operators sharing common interests
- 2. A way for groups of users to share a channel at different times without hearing other users on the channel
- 3. A protocol that increases the signal-to-noise ratio when multiple repeaters are linked together
- 4. A net that meets at a specified time

A talkgroup on a DMR repeater is a method for multiple users to share a single channel without interfering with each other. This allows different groups to communicate on the same frequency at different times, ensuring that only the intended group hears the transmission.

## 8.4.3 APRS Data Transmission

APRS (Automatic Packet Reporting System) is a versatile communication protocol used in amateur radio to transmit various types of data. Below is a question that explores the kinds of data that can be transmitted using APRS.

## T8D03

What kind of data can be transmitted by APRS?

- 1. GPS position data
- 2. Text messages
- 3. Weather data
- 4. All these choices are correct

APRS is designed to handle multiple types of data, including GPS position data, text messages, and weather data. This makes it a powerful tool for amateur radio operators to share information in real-time. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{D}$ , as all the listed data types can be transmitted using APRS.

## 8.4.4 NTSC Transmission Type

## T8D04

What type of transmission is indicated by the term NTSC?

- 1. A Normal Transmission mode in Static Circuit
- 2. A special mode for satellite uplink
- 3. An analog fast-scan color TV signal
- 4. A frame compression scheme for TV signals

The term NTSC stands for National Television System Committee, which developed the analog television color system used primarily in North America. The correct answer

is C, as NTSC refers to an analog fast-scan color TV signal.

## 8.4.5 Applications of APRS

## T8D05

Which of the following is an application of APRS?

- 1. Providing real-time tactical digital communications in conjunction with a map showing the locations of stations
- 2. Showing automatically the number of packets transmitted via PACTOR during a specific time interval
- 3. Providing voice over internet connection between repeaters
- 4. Providing information on the number of stations signed into a repeater

APRS (Automatic Packet Reporting System) is primarily used for real-time digital communication, often in conjunction with mapping software to display the locations of stations. This makes it particularly useful for tactical and emergency communications. The other options describe functionalities that are not typically associated with APRS.

## 8.4.6 Understanding PSK

## T8D06

What does the abbreviation PSK mean?

- 1. Pulse Shift Keying
- 2. Phase Shift Keying
- 3. Packet Short Keying
- 4. Phased Slide Keying

#### Intuitive Explanation

Imagine you're sending a secret message to your friend using a flashlight. Instead of turning the light on and off (which is like Morse code), you decide to twist the flashlight slightly to change the angle of the light beam. Each twist represents a different letter or symbol. This twisting of the light beam is similar to what happens in Phase Shift Keying (PSK), where the phase of the signal is changed to encode information.

## Advanced Explanation

Phase Shift Keying (PSK) is a digital modulation technique used in radio communications. In PSK, the phase of the carrier signal is varied to represent different data symbols. For example, in Binary Phase Shift Keying (BPSK), two phases (0 and 180 degrees) are used to represent binary 0 and 1. More complex forms of PSK, such as Quadrature Phase Shift Keying (QPSK), use four different phases to encode more bits per symbol. PSK is widely used in various communication systems due to its efficiency and robustness against noise.

## 8.4.7 DMR Technique Description

#### T8D07

Which of the following describes DMR?

- 1. A technique for time-multiplexing two digital voice signals on a single 12.5 kHz repeater channel
- 2. An automatic position tracking mode for FM mobiles communicating through repeaters
- 3. An automatic computer logging technique for hands-off logging when communicating while operating a vehicle
- 4. A digital technique for transmitting on two repeater inputs simultaneously for automatic error correction

DMR, or Digital Mobile Radio, is a digital radio standard that allows for efficient use of the radio spectrum by time-multiplexing two digital voice signals on a single 12.5 kHz repeater channel. This technique effectively doubles the capacity of the channel, making it a popular choice for modern radio communication systems.

## 8.4.8 Packet Radio Transmission Components

#### T8D08

Which of the following is included in packet radio transmissions?

- 1. A check sum that permits error detection
- 2. A header that contains the call sign of the station to which the information is being sent
- 3. Automatic repeat request in case of error
- 4. All these choices are correct

Packet radio transmissions are designed to ensure reliable communication over radio frequencies. They incorporate several mechanisms to achieve this, including error detection, addressing, and error correction.

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of packet radio like sending a letter. You need the address (header) to make sure it gets to the right person, a way to check if the letter got messed up in the mail (checksum), and a way to ask for a new letter if the first one was damaged (automatic repeat request). All these parts work together to make sure your message gets through correctly.

## Advanced Explanation

Packet radio transmissions use a structured format to ensure data integrity and correct delivery. The header contains essential information such as the destination call sign, which is crucial for routing the packet to the correct station. The checksum is a mathematical value used to detect errors in the transmitted data. If an error is detected,

the automatic repeat request (ARQ) mechanism ensures that the packet is retransmitted, thereby maintaining the reliability of the communication. All these components are integral to the packet radio protocol, making option D the correct choice.

## 8.4.9 CW in Radio Communication

## T8D09

What is CW?

- 1. A type of electromagnetic propagation
- 2. A digital mode used primarily on 2 meter FM
- 3. A technique for coil winding
- 4. Another name for a Morse code transmission

CW stands for Continuous Wave, which is another name for Morse code transmission. It is a method of communication that uses a continuous signal that is turned on and off to represent letters and numbers. This method is widely used in amateur radio for its simplicity and effectiveness, especially in situations where other forms of communication might be unreliable.

## 8.4.10 Supported Operating Activities in WSJT-X

## T8D10

Which of the following operating activities is supported by digital mode software in the WSJT-X software suite?

- 1. Earth-Moon-Earth
- 2. Weak signal propagation beacons
- 3. Meteor scatter
- 4. All these choices are correct

The WSJT-X software suite is a versatile tool that supports various digital mode operating activities, including Earth-Moon-Earth (EME) communications, weak signal propagation beacons, and meteor scatter. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{D}$ , as all the listed activities are supported by WSJT-X.

## 8.4.11 ARQ Transmission System

## T8D11

What is an ARQ transmission system?

- 1. A special transmission format limited to video signals
- 2. A system used to encrypt command signals to an amateur radio satellite
- 3. An error correction method in which the receiving station detects errors and sends a request for retransmission
- 4. A method of compressing data using autonomous reiterative Q codes prior to final encoding

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're sending a text message to a friend, but sometimes the message gets garbled. An ARQ (Automatic Repeat reQuest) system is like having your friend check the message and ask you to resend it if something doesn't make sense. It's a way to make sure the information gets through correctly without errors.

## **Advanced Explanation**

ARQ is a protocol used in data communication to ensure the integrity of transmitted data. When data is sent from one station to another, the receiving station checks for errors using various error detection techniques (e.g., checksums, cyclic redundancy checks). If an error is detected, the receiving station sends a request back to the transmitting station to resend the data. This process continues until the data is received correctly or a maximum number of retries is reached. ARQ is particularly useful in environments where the transmission medium is prone to errors, such as wireless communication.

## 8.4.12 Mesh Network in Amateur Radio

## T8D12

Which of the following best describes an amateur radio mesh network?

- 1. An amateur-radio based data network using commercial Wi-Fi equipment with modified firmware
- 2. A wide-bandwidth digital voice mode employing DMR protocols
- 3. A satellite communications network using modified commercial satellite TV hardware
- 4. An internet linking protocol used to network repeaters

An amateur radio mesh network is essentially a data network that leverages modified commercial Wi-Fi equipment to facilitate communication among amateur radio operators. This setup allows for the creation of a robust and flexible network that can operate independently of traditional internet infrastructure. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{A}$ , as it accurately describes the use of modified Wi-Fi equipment in an amateur radio context.

## 8.4.13 Understanding FT8

## T8D13

What is FT8?

- 1. A wideband FM voice mode
- 2. A digital mode capable of low signal-to-noise operation
- 3. An eight channel multiplex mode for FM repeaters
- 4. A digital slow-scan TV mode with forward error correction and automatic color compensation

FT8 is a digital communication mode designed for amateur radio operators. It is particularly effective in low signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) conditions, making it ideal for weak signal communication. Unlike traditional voice modes or wideband FM, FT8 uses a highly efficient digital protocol to transmit data quickly and reliably. This mode is not related to multiplexing or slow-scan TV, but rather focuses on maximizing the efficiency of data transmission in challenging conditions.

# Chapter 9 ANTENNAS AND FEED LINES

## 9.1 Antenna Basics

## 9.1.1 Beam Antenna

## T9A01

What is a beam antenna?

- 1. An antenna built from aluminum I-beams
- 2. An omnidirectional antenna invented by Clarence Beam
- 3. An antenna that concentrates signals in one direction
- 4. An antenna that reverses the phase of received signals

A beam antenna is designed to focus radio signals in a specific direction, which increases the signal strength in that direction while reducing it in others. This is useful for long-distance communication where you want to maximize the signal in the direction of the receiver.

## 9.1.2 Antenna Loading Types

## T9A02

Which of the following describes a type of antenna loading?

- 1. Electrically lengthening by inserting inductors in radiating elements
- 2. Inserting a resistor in the radiating portion of the antenna to make it resonant
- 3. Installing a spring in the base of a mobile vertical antenna to make it more flexible
- 4. Strengthening the radiating elements of a beam antenna to better resist wind damage

## **Brief Explanation**

Antenna loading refers to techniques used to modify the electrical characteristics of an antenna. In this case, the correct answer involves electrically lengthening the antenna by inserting inductors into the radiating elements. This method effectively increases the

antenna's electrical length without physically altering its size, which can be useful for tuning and optimizing performance.

## 9.1.3 Simple Dipole Orientation

## T9A03

Which of the following describes a simple dipole oriented parallel to Earth's surface?

- 1. A ground-wave antenna
- 2. A horizontally polarized antenna
- 3. A travelling-wave antenna
- 4. A vertically polarized antenna

## Explanation

A simple dipole antenna oriented parallel to the Earth's surface is horizontally polarized. This means that the electric field of the radio waves it emits is aligned horizontally. The other options describe different types of antennas or polarization orientations that do not match the given scenario.

## 9.1.4 Disadvantage of Short, Flexible Antennas

## T9A04

What is a disadvantage of the short, flexible antenna supplied with most handheld radio transceivers, compared to a full-sized quarter-wave antenna?

- 1. It has low efficiency
- 2. It transmits only circularly polarized signals
- 3. It is mechanically fragile
- 4. All these choices are correct

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a tiny, bendy antenna on your walkie-talkie. It's convenient because it doesn't get in the way, but it's not as good at sending and receiving signals as a bigger, full-sized antenna. This is because the short antenna isn't as efficient—it doesn't convert as much of the radio's power into actual radio waves that can travel far.

#### Advanced Explanation

A full-sized quarter-wave antenna is designed to be resonant at the operating frequency, which means it efficiently radiates the signal. In contrast, the short, flexible antenna is often much shorter than a quarter-wavelength, leading to a mismatch in impedance and lower radiation efficiency. This inefficiency results in more of the transmitter's power being lost as heat rather than being radiated as useful signal. While the short antenna is convenient and durable, its reduced efficiency is a significant drawback compared to a full-sized antenna.

## 9.1.5 Resonant Frequency of a Dipole Antenna

## T9A05

Which of the following increases the resonant frequency of a dipole antenna?

- 1. Lengthening it
- 2. Inserting coils in series with radiating wires
- 3. Shortening it
- 4. Adding capacitive loading to the ends of the radiating wires

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of a dipole antenna like a swing. The longer the swing, the slower it moves back and forth (lower frequency). If you make the swing shorter, it moves faster (higher frequency). Similarly, shortening a dipole antenna increases its resonant frequency.

## **Advanced Explanation**

The resonant frequency of a dipole antenna is inversely proportional to its length. This relationship is derived from the fundamental principles of antenna theory, where the antenna's length is typically half the wavelength of the operating frequency. Mathematically, the resonant frequency f can be expressed as:

$$f = \frac{c}{2L}$$

where c is the speed of light and L is the length of the antenna. Therefore, shortening the antenna L increases the resonant frequency f. Adding coils or capacitive loading generally lowers the resonant frequency, as these components increase the effective electrical length of the antenna.

## 9.1.6 Antenna Gain Comparison

## T9A06

Which of the following types of antenna offers the greatest gain?

- 1. 5/8 wave vertical
- 2. Isotropic
- 3. J pole
- 4. Yagi

## Intuitive Explanation

Imagine you're trying to shout across a field. If you just yell in all directions (isotropic), your voice spreads out and doesn't go very far in any one direction. If you use a megaphone (Yagi), you can focus your voice in one direction, making it much louder and clearer for someone standing in that direction. Similarly, a Yagi antenna focuses radio waves in a specific direction, giving it the greatest gain compared to the other antennas listed.

## **Advanced Explanation**

An isotropic antenna radiates power uniformly in all directions, resulting in a gain of 0 dBi. A 5/8 wave vertical antenna and a J pole antenna have some directional properties, but their gain is generally lower than that of a Yagi antenna. A Yagi antenna is a directional antenna that uses multiple elements to focus the radio waves in a specific direction, resulting in higher gain. The gain of a Yagi antenna can range from 7 to 20 dBi or more, depending on the number of elements and their spacing. This makes the Yagi antenna the best choice among the options for achieving the greatest gain.

## 9.1.7 Disadvantage of Using Handheld VHF Transceiver in a Vehicle

## T9A07

What is a disadvantage of using a handheld VHF transceiver with a flexible antenna inside a vehicle?

- 1. Signal strength is reduced due to the shielding effect of the vehicle
- 2. The bandwidth of the antenna will decrease, increasing SWR
- 3. The SWR might decrease, decreasing the signal strength
- 4. All these choices are correct

When using a handheld VHF transceiver inside a vehicle, the metal body of the vehicle acts as a shield, reducing the signal strength. This is because the metal structure of the vehicle can block or reflect radio waves, making it harder for the signal to reach the outside. This is a common issue when using portable radios in enclosed metal spaces.

## 9.1.8 Quarter-Wavelength Antenna Length for 146 MHz

#### T9A08

What is the approximate length, in inches, of a quarter-wavelength vertical antenna for 146 MHz?

- 1. 112
- 2. 50
- 3. **19**
- 4. 12

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to build a tiny antenna that works perfectly with a radio signal at 146 MHz. The length of this antenna is crucial because it needs to match the wavelength of the signal. A quarter-wavelength antenna is one-fourth the length of the full wavelength of the signal. For 146 MHz, this turns out to be about 19 inches. Think of it like cutting a string to just the right length so it vibrates perfectly when you pluck it!

## **Advanced Explanation**

To determine the length of a quarter-wavelength antenna, we first need to calculate the wavelength of the signal. The wavelength ( $\lambda$ ) can be found using the formula:

$$\lambda = \frac{c}{f}$$

where c is the speed of light (3  $\times$  10<sup>8</sup> meters per second) and f is the frequency (146 MHz or 146  $\times$  10<sup>6</sup> Hz).

$$\lambda = \frac{3 \times 10^8}{146 \times 10^6} \approx 2.05 \text{ meters}$$

A quarter-wavelength is then:

$$\frac{\lambda}{4} = \frac{2.05}{4} \approx 0.51 \text{ meters}$$

Converting meters to inches (1 meter = 39.37 inches):

$$0.51 \times 39.37 \approx 19.9$$
 inches

Thus, the approximate length of a quarter-wavelength vertical antenna for  $146~\mathrm{MHz}$  is  $19~\mathrm{inches}$ .

## 9.1.9 Half-Wavelength Dipole Antenna Length

## T9A09

What is the approximate length, in inches, of a half-wavelength 6 meter dipole antenna?

- 1. 6
- 2. 50
- 3. **112**
- 4. 236

## **Intuitive Explanation**

A half-wavelength dipole antenna is designed to be half the length of the wavelength of the signal it is intended to transmit or receive. For a 6 meter wavelength, half of that is 3 meters. Converting meters to inches (since 1 meter is approximately 39.37 inches), we get roughly 118 inches. The closest option to this value is 112 inches.

## **Advanced Explanation**

The length of a half-wavelength dipole antenna can be calculated using the formula:

Length = 
$$\frac{\lambda}{2}$$

where  $\lambda$  is the wavelength. For a 6 meter wavelength:

Length = 
$$\frac{6}{2}$$
 = 3 meters

To convert meters to inches:

3 meters  $\times$  39.37 inches/meter  $\approx$  118 inches

The closest option to this calculated value is 112 inches, making it the correct answer.

## 9.1.10 Half-Wave Dipole Antenna Radiation Pattern

## T9A10

In which direction does a half-wave dipole antenna radiate the strongest signal?

- 1. Equally in all directions
- 2. Off the ends of the antenna
- 3. In the direction of the feed line
- 4. Broadside to the antenna

## Intuitive Explanation

Imagine a half-wave dipole antenna as a straight stick that's waving in the air. When you send a signal through it, the stick doesn't radiate the signal equally in all directions. Instead, it's like the stick is shouting the loudest to the sides, not to the ends. So, the strongest signal is sent out to the sides, or broadside, of the antenna.

## **Advanced Explanation**

A half-wave dipole antenna is designed to radiate electromagnetic waves most effectively in a direction perpendicular to its axis. This is known as the broadside direction. The radiation pattern of a half-wave dipole is typically doughnut-shaped, with the antenna lying along the axis of the doughnut. The signal strength is maximum in the plane perpendicular to the antenna and diminishes as you move towards the ends of the antenna. This is due to the current distribution along the antenna, which is maximum at the center and decreases towards the ends, resulting in the strongest radiation broadside to the antenna.

## 9.1.11 Antenna Gain

## T9A11

What is antenna gain?

- 1. The additional power that is added to the transmitter power
- 2. The additional power that is required in the antenna when transmitting on a higher frequency
- 3. The increase in signal strength in a specified direction compared to a reference antenna
- 4. The increase in impedance on receive or transmit compared to a reference antenna

Antenna gain refers to the increase in signal strength in a specific direction compared to a reference antenna, typically an isotropic radiator or a dipole. This concept is

crucial in understanding how antennas focus energy in particular directions to improve communication efficiency.

## 9.1.12 Advantage of a 5/8 Wavelength Whip Antenna

## T9A12

What is an advantage of a 5/8 wavelength whip antenna for VHF or UHF mobile service?

- 1. It has more gain than a 1/4-wavelength antenna
- 2. It radiates at a very high angle
- 3. It eliminates distortion caused by reflected signals
- 4. It has 10 times the power gain of a 1/4 wavelength whip

The 5/8 wavelength whip antenna offers higher gain compared to a 1/4-wavelength antenna, making it more efficient for VHF or UHF mobile service. This increased gain helps in improving signal strength and range.

## 9.2 Antenna Connection Essentials

## 9.2.1 Benefits of Low SWR

## T9B01

What is a benefit of low SWR?

- 1. Reduced television interference
- 2. Reduced signal loss
- 3. Less antenna wear
- 4. All these choices are correct

Low SWR (Standing Wave Ratio) is crucial in radio communications because it indicates how well the antenna is matched to the transmission line. When the SWR is low, it means that most of the transmitted power is being radiated by the antenna rather than being reflected back, which reduces signal loss. This is why option B is the correct answer.

## 9.2.2 Common Impedance of Coaxial Cables in Amateur Radio

#### T9B02

What is the most common impedance of coaxial cables used in amateur radio?

- 1. 8 ohms
- 2. **50** ohms
- 3. 600 ohms
- 4. 12 ohms

Coaxial cables are widely used in amateur radio for transmitting signals. The impedance of a coaxial cable is a measure of how much the cable resists the flow of electrical energy. The most common impedance for coaxial cables in amateur radio is 50 ohms, which is a standard that balances signal loss and power handling capabilities. This makes option B the correct answer.

## 9.2.3 Common Feed Line for Amateur Radio Antennas

## T9B03

Why is coaxial cable the most common feed line for amateur radio antenna systems?

- 1. It is easy to use and requires few special installation considerations
- 2. It has less loss than any other type of feed line
- 3. It can handle more power than any other type of feed line
- 4. It is less expensive than any other type of feed line

Coaxial cable is widely used in amateur radio antenna systems primarily because of its ease of use and minimal installation requirements. While other types of feed lines may offer advantages in specific areas such as lower loss or higher power handling, coaxial cable strikes a balance between performance and practicality, making it the most common choice for amateur radio operators.

## 9.2.4 Function of an Antenna Tuner

## T9B04

What is the major function of an antenna tuner (antenna coupler)?

- 1. It matches the antenna system impedance to the transceiver's output impedance
- 2. It helps a receiver automatically tune in weak stations
- 3. It allows an antenna to be used on both transmit and receive
- 4. It automatically selects the proper antenna for the frequency band being used

The primary function of an antenna tuner is to ensure that the impedance of the antenna system matches the output impedance of the transceiver. This matching is crucial for efficient power transfer and minimizing signal reflection, which can lead to poor performance and potential damage to the equipment.

## 9.2.5 Effect of Frequency Increase in Coaxial Cable

## T9B05

What happens as the frequency of a signal in coaxial cable is increased?

- 1. The characteristic impedance decreases
- 2. The loss decreases
- 3. The characteristic impedance increases
- 4. The loss increases

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to send a message through a long, narrow tunnel. If you whisper (low frequency), the message might travel quite far before it fades away. But if you shout (high frequency), the sound waves bounce around more and lose energy faster, so the message doesn't travel as far. Similarly, in a coaxial cable, higher frequency signals lose more energy as they travel, leading to increased loss.

## **Advanced Explanation**

As the frequency of a signal in a coaxial cable increases, the skin effect becomes more pronounced. The skin effect causes the signal to travel more on the surface of the conductor rather than through its entire cross-section. This results in higher resistance and, consequently, higher loss. Additionally, dielectric losses in the insulating material between the conductors also increase with frequency. These combined effects lead to an overall increase in signal loss as the frequency increases. The characteristic impedance of the cable, however, remains relatively constant with frequency, assuming the cable is properly designed and terminated.

## 9.2.6 RF Connector Types for High Frequencies

#### T9B06

Which of the following RF connector types is most suitable for frequencies above 400 MHz?

- 1. UHF (PL-259/SO-239)
- 2. Type N
- 3. RS-213
- 4. DB-25

## Explanation

The question asks about the most suitable RF connector type for frequencies above 400 MHz. The correct answer is Type N, which is designed to handle higher frequencies efficiently. UHF connectors, while commonly used, are not ideal for frequencies above 400 MHz due to their design limitations. RS-213 and DB-25 connectors are not typically used for RF applications at such high frequencies. Type N connectors are preferred for their robust construction and ability to maintain signal integrity at higher frequencies.

## 9.2.7 PL-259 Coax Connectors

#### T9B07

Which of the following is true of PL-259 type coax connectors?

- 1. They are preferred for microwave operation
- 2. They are watertight
- 3. They are commonly used at HF and VHF frequencies
- 4. They are a bayonet-type connector

## **Intuitive Explanation**

PL-259 connectors are like the Swiss Army knife of coax connectors—they're versatile and commonly used in the HF (High Frequency) and VHF (Very High Frequency) ranges. Think of them as the go-to connector for your everyday radio needs, not for specialized tasks like microwave operation or underwater adventures.

## Advanced Explanation

The PL-259 connector, also known as the UHF connector, is widely used in amateur radio for its robustness and ease of use. It is particularly suited for HF (3-30 MHz) and VHF (30-300 MHz) frequencies due to its design, which minimizes signal loss at these ranges. While it is not ideal for microwave frequencies (where specialized connectors like N-type or SMA are preferred), it remains a staple in many radio setups. The connector is not inherently watertight, and it uses a threaded coupling mechanism rather than a bayonet-type connection.

## 9.2.8 Coaxial Feed Line Loss Sources

#### T9B08

Which of the following is a source of loss in coaxial feed line?

- 1. Water intrusion into coaxial connectors
- 2. High SWR
- 3. Multiple connectors in the line
- 4. All these choices are correct

## Explanation

All the listed choices are indeed sources of loss in coaxial feed lines. Water intrusion can cause corrosion and signal degradation, high SWR (Standing Wave Ratio) indicates impedance mismatches that lead to power loss, and multiple connectors introduce additional points of potential signal loss. Therefore, the correct answer is **D**: All these choices are correct.

## 9.2.9 Erratic Changes in SWR

#### T9B09

What can cause erratic changes in SWR?

- 1. Local thunderstorm
- 2. Loose connection in the antenna or feed line
- 3. Over-modulation
- 4. Overload from a strong local station

Erratic changes in SWR (Standing Wave Ratio) are often caused by physical issues in the antenna system. A loose connection in the antenna or feed line can disrupt the signal flow, leading to inconsistent SWR readings. This is a common issue that can be easily fixed by checking and securing all connections.

## 9.2.10 Electrical Difference Between RG-58 and RG-213 Coaxial Cable

## T9B10

What is the electrical difference between RG-58 and RG-213 coaxial cable?

- 1. There is no significant difference between the two types
- 2. RG-58 cable has two shields
- 3. RG-213 cable has less loss at a given frequency
- 4. RG-58 cable can handle higher power levels

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of coaxial cables like water pipes. The thicker the pipe, the more water can flow through it with less resistance. Similarly, RG-213 is like a thicker pipe compared to RG-58, allowing signals to travel with less loss. So, RG-213 is better for longer distances or higher frequencies because it doesn't lose as much signal strength.

#### Advanced Explanation

The primary electrical difference between RG-58 and RG-213 coaxial cables lies in their attenuation characteristics. Attenuation refers to the loss of signal strength as it travels through the cable. RG-213 has a larger diameter and better shielding compared to RG-58, which results in lower attenuation at a given frequency. This makes RG-213 more suitable for applications requiring longer cable runs or higher frequencies, where minimizing signal loss is crucial. Additionally, RG-213 can handle higher power levels due to its thicker conductor and better insulation, but the key difference highlighted in this question is the lower loss at a given frequency.

## 9.2.11 Lowest Loss Feed Line at VHF and UHF

## T9B11

Which of the following types of feed line has the lowest loss at VHF and UHF?

- 1. 50-ohm flexible coax
- 2. Multi-conductor unbalanced cable
- 3. Air-insulated hardline
- 4. 75-ohm flexible coax

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of feed lines as pipes that carry your radio signals. Just like water pipes, some pipes are better at keeping the water (or signal) from leaking out. At higher frequencies like VHF and UHF, the type of pipe (feed line) matters a lot. Air-insulated hardline is like a super-efficient pipe that doesn't let much signal escape, making it the best choice for these frequencies.

## **Advanced Explanation**

Feed line loss is primarily due to the dielectric material and conductor resistance. At VHF and UHF frequencies, the dielectric loss becomes significant. Air-insulated hardline uses air as the dielectric, which has a very low loss tangent compared to solid dielectrics used in flexible coax. Additionally, the rigid construction of hardline reduces conductor loss. Therefore, air-insulated hardline exhibits the lowest loss at VHF and UHF frequencies.

## 9.2.12 Understanding Standing Wave Ratio (SWR)

## T9B12

What is standing wave ratio (SWR)?

- 1. A measure of how well a load is matched to a transmission line
- 2. The ratio of amplifier power output to input
- 3. The transmitter efficiency ratio
- 4. An indication of the quality of your station's ground connection

#### Intuitive Explanation

Imagine you're trying to push a swing. If you push at just the right time, the swing goes higher and higher with each push. But if you push at the wrong time, the swing doesn't go as high, and some of your effort is wasted. In radio terms, the swing is like the signal traveling along a transmission line, and your push is like the signal trying to move from the transmitter to the antenna. The Standing Wave Ratio (SWR) tells you how well your push (the signal) is matching the swing (the transmission line and antenna). If the SWR is low, it means the signal is moving smoothly, like a well-timed push. If the SWR is high, it means there's a mismatch, and some of the signal is bouncing back, like a poorly timed push.

## **Advanced Explanation**

The Standing Wave Ratio (SWR) is a critical parameter in radio frequency (RF) engineering that quantifies the impedance matching between a transmission line and its load (typically an antenna). When the impedance of the load matches the characteristic impedance of the transmission line, maximum power is transferred, and the SWR is 1:1. However, if there is a mismatch, some of the power is reflected back towards the source, creating standing waves along the transmission line. The SWR is defined as the ratio of the maximum voltage (or current) to the minimum voltage (or current) along the line. Mathematically, it is expressed as:

$$SWR = \frac{V_{\text{max}}}{V_{\text{min}}} = \frac{1 + |\Gamma|}{1 - |\Gamma|}$$

where  $\Gamma$  is the reflection coefficient, which depends on the impedance mismatch. A high SWR indicates a significant mismatch, leading to power loss and potential damage to the transmitter. Therefore, maintaining a low SWR is essential for efficient RF transmission.

## Chapter 10 SAFETY

## 10.1 Safety and Function Guidelines

## 10.1.1 Safety Hazards of a 12-Volt Storage Battery

## T0A01

Which of the following is a safety hazard of a 12-volt storage battery?

- 1. Touching both terminals with the hands can cause electrical shock
- 2. Shorting the terminals can cause burns, fire, or an explosion
- 3. RF emissions from a nearby transmitter can cause the electrolyte to emit poison gas
- 4. All these choices are correct

A 12-volt storage battery, while low in voltage, can still pose significant safety risks if mishandled. The primary hazard comes from shorting the terminals, which can lead to high current flow, resulting in burns, fire, or even an explosion. Touching the terminals with bare hands is generally safe due to the low voltage, and RF emissions from a nearby transmitter do not affect the electrolyte in such a way as to emit poison gas. Therefore, the correct answer is **B**.

## 10.1.2 Health Hazards of Electrical Current

## T0A02

What health hazard is presented by electrical current flowing through the body?

- 1. It may cause injury by heating tissue
- 2. It may disrupt the electrical functions of cells
- 3. It may cause involuntary muscle contractions
- 4. All these choices are correct

Electrical current flowing through the body can pose multiple health hazards. It can cause injury by heating tissue, disrupt the electrical functions of cells, and lead to involuntary muscle contractions. Therefore, all the given choices are correct.

## 10.1.3 Circuit Indicated by Black Wire Insulation

## T0A03

In the United States, what circuit does black wire insulation indicate in a three-wire  $120~\mathrm{V}$  cable?

- 1. Neutral
- 2. **Hot**
- 3. Equipment ground
- 4. Black insulation is never used

## Intuitive Explanation

Think of the black wire as the energized wire in your household electrical system. It's the one that carries the electrical current from the power source to your devices. If you were to touch it (which you should never do!), you'd get a shock because it's hot with electricity.

## Advanced Explanation

In a standard three-wire 120 V AC electrical system in the United States, the black wire is designated as the hot wire. This wire carries the current from the power source to the load (e.g., a light bulb or an appliance). The other wires in the cable are typically white (neutral) and green or bare (ground). The neutral wire completes the circuit by providing a return path for the current, while the ground wire is a safety feature that provides a path to earth in case of a fault. The black wire's insulation color is standardized to indicate its role as the hot wire, ensuring consistency and safety in electrical installations.

## 10.1.4 Purpose of a Fuse in an Electrical Circuit

## T0A04

What is the purpose of a fuse in an electrical circuit?

- 1. To prevent power supply ripple from damaging a component
- 2. To remove power in case of overload
- 3. To limit current to prevent shocks
- 4. All these choices are correct

A fuse is a safety device designed to protect an electrical circuit from damage caused by excessive current. When the current flowing through the circuit exceeds a certain threshold, the fuse blows or melts, breaking the circuit and stopping the flow of electricity. This prevents potential damage to the circuit components and reduces the risk of fire. The correct answer is  $\mathbf{B}$ , as the primary purpose of a fuse is to remove power in case of an overload.

## 10.1.5 Fuse Replacement Safety

## T0A05

Why should a 5-ampere fuse never be replaced with a 20-ampere fuse?

- 1. The larger fuse would be likely to blow because it is rated for higher current
- 2. The power supply ripple would greatly increase
- 3. Excessive current could cause a fire
- 4. All these choices are correct

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine a fuse as a safety guard for your electrical devices. If the guard is too lenient (like a 20-ampere fuse replacing a 5-ampere one), it might let too much electricity pass through, which can overheat and potentially cause a fire. Always use the correct fuse to keep your devices safe!

## **Advanced Explanation**

A fuse is designed to protect electrical circuits by breaking the circuit when the current exceeds a specified value. A 5-ampere fuse will blow when the current exceeds 5 amperes, preventing damage or fire. Replacing it with a 20-ampere fuse means the circuit will not break until the current exceeds 20 amperes, which could allow excessive current to flow, leading to overheating and potentially causing a fire. Always match the fuse rating to the circuit's requirements to ensure safety.

## 10.1.6 Guarding Against Electrical Shock at Your Station

## T0A06

What is a good way to guard against electrical shock at your station?

- 1. Use three-wire cords and plugs for all AC powered equipment
- 2. Connect all AC powered station equipment to a common safety ground
- 3. Install mechanical interlocks in high-voltage circuits
- 4. All these choices are correct

To guard against electrical shock at your station, it is important to follow multiple safety measures. Using three-wire cords and plugs ensures that equipment is properly grounded. Connecting all AC powered station equipment to a common safety ground helps prevent potential differences that could lead to shocks. Installing mechanical interlocks in high-voltage circuits adds an extra layer of safety by preventing accidental contact with high voltage. Therefore, all the provided choices are correct and should be implemented to ensure safety.

## 10.1.7 Lightning Arrester Installation in Coaxial Feed Line

## T0A07

Where should a lightning arrester be installed in a coaxial feed line?

- 1. At the output connector of a transceiver
- 2. At the antenna feed point
- 3. At the ac power service panel
- 4. On a grounded panel near where feed lines enter the building

A lightning arrester should be installed on a grounded panel near where feed lines enter the building to protect the equipment from lightning-induced surges. This placement ensures that any lightning strike is safely diverted to the ground before it can reach and damage the transceiver or other sensitive equipment.

## 10.1.8 Fuse or Circuit Breaker Installation in 120V AC Power Circuit

## T0A08

Where should a fuse or circuit breaker be installed in a 120V AC power circuit?

- 1. In series with the hot conductor only
- 2. In series with the hot and neutral conductors
- 3. In parallel with the hot conductor only
- 4. In parallel with the hot and neutral conductors

#### **Explanation**

In a 120V AC power circuit, the fuse or circuit breaker should be installed in series with the hot conductor only. This ensures that the circuit is interrupted in case of an overcurrent, protecting the wiring and devices connected to the circuit. Installing it in series with the neutral conductor is unnecessary and could lead to safety hazards. Parallel installation would not provide the necessary protection.

## 10.1.9 Ground Rods and Earth Connections

## T0A09

What should be done to all external ground rods or earth connections?

- 1. Waterproof them with silicone caulk or electrical tape
- 2. Keep them as far apart as possible
- 3. Bond them together with heavy wire or conductive strap
- 4. Tune them for resonance on the lowest frequency of operation

To ensure safety and proper functioning of external ground rods or earth connections, they should be bonded together with heavy wire or conductive strap. This helps in maintaining a common ground potential and reduces the risk of electrical hazards.

## 10.1.10 Battery Charging and Discharging Hazards

## T0A10

What hazard is caused by charging or discharging a battery too quickly?

- 1. Overheating or out-gassing
- 2. Excess output ripple
- 3. Half-wave rectification
- 4. Inverse memory effect

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're trying to fill a water balloon too quickly. If you pour water in too fast, the balloon might burst or leak. Similarly, when you charge or discharge a battery too quickly, it can overheat or release gases, which can be dangerous. This is why it's important to charge batteries at the right speed.

## **Advanced Explanation**

When a battery is charged or discharged too quickly, the chemical reactions inside the battery occur at an accelerated rate. This can lead to several issues:

- Overheating: Rapid charging or discharging increases the internal resistance of the battery, causing it to heat up. Excessive heat can damage the battery's internal structure and reduce its lifespan.
- Out-gassing: The accelerated chemical reactions can produce gases faster than the battery can safely vent them. This can lead to pressure build-up and potentially cause the battery to swell, leak, or even explode.

To avoid these hazards, it's crucial to use chargers and discharge rates that are within the battery's specified limits.

## 10.1.11 Hazard in Power Supply After Turning Off

#### T0A11

What hazard exists in a power supply immediately after turning it off?

- 1. Circulating currents in the dc filter
- 2. Leakage flux in the power transformer
- 3. Voltage transients from kickback diodes
- 4. Charge stored in filter capacitors

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you have a water balloon that's full of water. Even after you stop filling it, the water doesn't just disappear—it stays in the balloon until you let it out. Similarly, in a power supply, the filter capacitors store electrical charge. When you turn off the power supply, this charge doesn't instantly vanish. It remains stored in the capacitors, posing a potential hazard if not properly discharged.

## **Advanced Explanation**

Filter capacitors in a power supply are used to smooth out the voltage by storing electrical charge. When the power supply is turned off, these capacitors retain their charge due to their inherent property of storing energy. This stored charge can be dangerous because it can deliver a significant electrical shock if someone comes into contact with the capacitor terminals. To mitigate this risk, power supplies often include discharge resistors or other mechanisms to safely dissipate the stored charge after the power is turned off.

## 10.1.12 Precautions for Measuring High Voltages

#### T0A12

Which of the following precautions should be taken when measuring high voltages with a voltmeter?

- 1. Ensure that the voltmeter has very low impedance
- 2. Ensure that the voltmeter and leads are rated for use at the voltages to be measured
- 3. Ensure that the circuit is grounded through the voltmeter
- 4. Ensure that the voltmeter is set to the correct frequency

When measuring high voltages, it is crucial to ensure that the voltmeter and its leads are rated for the voltages being measured. This prevents damage to the equipment and ensures accurate readings. The other options are either incorrect or irrelevant to the safety and accuracy of high voltage measurements.

## 10.2 Safety and Installation Principles for Towers

## 10.2.1 Good Practices for Ground Wire Installation on Towers

#### T0B01

Which of the following is good practice when installing ground wires on a tower for lightning protection?

- 1. Put a drip loop in the ground connection to prevent water damage to the ground system
- 2. Make sure all ground wire bends are right angles
- 3. Ensure that connections are short and direct
- 4. All these choices are correct

## Explanation

When installing ground wires on a tower for lightning protection, it is crucial to ensure that the connections are short and direct. This minimizes the resistance and inductance in the grounding path, which is essential for effective lightning protection. While drip loops and right-angle bends might seem like good ideas, they can introduce unnecessary

complications and potential points of failure. Therefore, the best practice is to keep the connections as straightforward as possible.

## 10.2.2 Antenna Tower Climbing Requirements

## T0B02

What is required when climbing an antenna tower?

- 1. Have sufficient training on safe tower climbing techniques
- 2. Use appropriate tie-off to the tower at all times
- 3. Always wear an approved climbing harness
- 4. All these choices are correct

When climbing an antenna tower, it is essential to ensure safety at all times. This includes having proper training, using appropriate tie-off techniques, and wearing an approved climbing harness. All these measures are necessary to prevent accidents and ensure a safe climbing experience.

## 10.2.3 Safety When Climbing a Tower

## T0B03

Under what circumstances is it safe to climb a tower without a helper or observer?

- 1. When no electrical work is being performed
- 2. When no mechanical work is being performed
- 3. When the work being done is not more than 20 feet above the ground
- 4. Never

#### Explanation

Climbing a tower is inherently risky due to the height and potential hazards such as electrical equipment, mechanical components, and environmental factors. Safety protocols, including having a helper or observer, are essential to mitigate these risks. The correct answer emphasizes that it is never safe to climb a tower without a helper or observer, regardless of the circumstances. This ensures that assistance is immediately available in case of an emergency.

## 10.2.4 Antenna Tower Safety Precautions

#### T0B04

Which of the following is an important safety precaution to observe when putting up an antenna tower?

- 1. Wear a ground strap connected to your wrist at all times
- 2. Insulate the base of the tower to avoid lightning strikes
- 3. Look for and stay clear of any overhead electrical wires
- 4. All these choices are correct

When installing an antenna tower, it is crucial to ensure that the area is free from overhead electrical wires to prevent accidents. This is a fundamental safety measure that should always be observed.

## 10.2.5 Safety Wire in Turnbuckles

#### T0B05

What is the purpose of a safety wire through a turnbuckle used to tension guy lines?

- 1. Secure the guy line if the turnbuckle breaks
- 2. Prevent loosening of the turnbuckle from vibration
- 3. Provide a ground path for lightning strikes
- 4. Provide an ability to measure for proper tensioning

The purpose of a safety wire through a turnbuckle is to prevent the turnbuckle from loosening due to vibration. This ensures that the tension in the guy lines remains consistent, maintaining the stability of the structure.

## 10.2.6 Minimum Safe Distance from Power Lines for Antenna Installation

#### T0B06

What is the minimum safe distance from a power line to allow when installing an antenna?

- 1. Add the height of the antenna to the height of the power line and multiply by a factor of 1.5
- 2. The height of the power line above ground
- 3. 1/2 wavelength at the operating frequency
- 4. Enough so that if the antenna falls, no part of it can come closer than 10 feet to the power wires

When installing an antenna, it is crucial to maintain a safe distance from power lines to prevent accidents. The correct answer ensures that even if the antenna falls, it will not come within 10 feet of the power wires, reducing the risk of electrical hazards.

## 10.2.7 Safety Rules for Crank-Up Towers

#### T0B07

Which of the following is an important safety rule to remember when using a crank-up tower?

- 1. This type of tower must never be painted
- 2. This type of tower must never be grounded
- 3. This type of tower must not be climbed unless it is retracted, or mechanical safety locking devices have been installed
- 4. All these choices are correct

When using a crank-up tower, it is crucial to ensure that the tower is either fully retracted or that mechanical safety locking devices are in place before climbing. This prevents the tower from collapsing or extending unexpectedly, which could lead to serious injury or death. The other options, such as not painting or grounding the tower, are not relevant safety concerns for crank-up towers.

## 10.2.8 Proper Grounding Method for a Tower

#### T0B08

Which is a proper grounding method for a tower?

- 1. A single four-foot ground rod, driven into the ground no more than 12 inches from the base
- 2. A ferrite-core RF choke connected between the tower and ground
- 3. A connection between the tower base and a cold water pipe
- 4. Separate eight-foot ground rods for each tower leg, bonded to the tower and each other

#### Intuitive Explanation

Imagine your tower is like a giant lightning rod. If it's not properly grounded, it could attract lightning and cause damage. The best way to protect it is to have multiple ground rods, one for each leg of the tower, and make sure they're all connected. This way, if lightning strikes, the electricity has multiple paths to safely dissipate into the ground.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

Proper grounding for a tower involves ensuring that each leg of the tower has its own ground rod, typically eight feet long, which is driven into the ground. These ground rods should be bonded to the tower and to each other to create a low-resistance path for electrical currents, such as those from lightning strikes, to safely dissipate into the earth. This method reduces the risk of electrical damage to the tower and connected equipment. Using a single ground rod or relying on a cold water pipe is insufficient because it does not provide the same level of protection. A ferrite-core RF choke is not a grounding method but rather a device used to suppress high-frequency interference.

## 10.2.9 Antenna Attachment to Utility Poles

#### T0B09

Why should you avoid attaching an antenna to a utility pole?

- 1. The antenna will not work properly because of induced voltages
- 2. The 60 Hz radiations from the feed line may increase the SWR
- 3. The antenna could contact high-voltage power lines
- 4. All these choices are correct

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Attaching an antenna to a utility pole might seem like a quick way to get it up high, but it's a bit like playing with fire—literally! Utility poles carry high-voltage power lines, and if your antenna touches one, it could lead to a dangerous situation. Think of it as trying to balance a metal rod near a live wire; not the best idea, right?

## **Advanced Explanation**

Utility poles are designed to support electrical power lines, which often carry high voltages. When you attach an antenna to such a pole, there is a significant risk that the antenna or its supporting structure could come into contact with these high-voltage lines. This contact can result in electrical arcing, which is extremely hazardous and can cause severe injury or even death. Additionally, the proximity to high-voltage lines can induce unwanted currents in the antenna, potentially damaging your equipment. Therefore, it is crucial to maintain a safe distance from utility poles when installing antennas to avoid these risks.

## 10.2.10 Grounding Conductors for Lightning Protection

#### T0B10

Which of the following is true when installing grounding conductors used for lightning protection?

- 1. Use only non-insulated wire
- 2. Wires must be carefully routed with precise right-angle bends
- 3. Sharp bends must be avoided
- 4. Common grounds must be avoided

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

When installing grounding conductors for lightning protection, think of it like setting up a path for lightning to follow safely to the ground. You wouldn't want the path to have sharp turns because that could cause problems, just like how a sharp turn in a water pipe could cause a blockage or a burst. So, avoiding sharp bends ensures that the lightning can travel smoothly and safely to the ground.

## **Advanced Explanation**

Grounding conductors are crucial for safely dissipating the energy from a lightning strike into the earth. Sharp bends in the conductor can create points of high electrical stress, which can lead to arcing or even failure of the conductor. This is because the electric field is more concentrated at sharp bends, increasing the risk of breakdown. Therefore, it is essential to avoid sharp bends to maintain the integrity and effectiveness of the grounding system. Additionally, using insulated wire, precise right-angle bends, or avoiding common grounds are not standard practices and can compromise the safety and efficiency of the grounding system.

## 10.2.11 Grounding Requirements for Amateur Radio Towers

## T0B11

Which of the following establishes grounding requirements for an amateur radio tower or antenna?

- 1. FCC Part 97 rules
- 2. Local electrical codes
- 3. FAA tower lighting regulations
- 4. UL recommended practices

## Explanation

The grounding requirements for an amateur radio tower or antenna are primarily governed by local electrical codes. These codes ensure that the installation is safe and meets the electrical standards set by the local authorities. While FCC Part 97 rules regulate the operation of amateur radio stations, they do not specifically address grounding requirements. Similarly, FAA tower lighting regulations focus on the visibility of towers to aircraft, and UL recommended practices are guidelines rather than mandatory codes. Therefore, the correct answer is **B: Local electrical codes**.

## 10.3 Radiation Revelations

## 10.3.1 Type of Radiation in Radio Signals

## T0C01

What type of radiation are radio signals?

- 1. Gamma radiation
- 2. Ionizing radiation
- 3. Alpha radiation
- 4. Non-ionizing radiation

Radio signals are a form of electromagnetic radiation, but they are not powerful enough to ionize atoms or molecules. This means they fall under the category of nonionizing radiation, which includes other types like visible light and microwaves. Unlike ionizing radiation (e.g., gamma rays, X-rays), non-ionizing radiation does not have enough energy to remove tightly bound electrons from atoms, making it generally safer for human exposure.

## 10.3.2 Maximum Permissible Exposure and Frequency

## T0C02

At which of the following frequencies does maximum permissible exposure have the lowest value?

- 1. 3.5 MHz
- 2. **50** MHz
- 3. 440 MHz
- 4. 1296 MHz

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of maximum permissible exposure (MPE) as a safety limit for how much radio frequency energy your body can handle. Just like how you need to wear sunscreen to protect your skin from too much sun, MPE protects you from too much radio energy. Interestingly, the safety limit changes depending on the frequency of the radio waves. Lower frequencies (like 3.5 MHz) are generally safer, while higher frequencies (like 1296 MHz) can be more harmful. However, there's a sweet spot around 50 MHz where the MPE is the lowest, meaning you need to be extra careful at this frequency.

#### **Advanced Explanation**

Maximum Permissible Exposure (MPE) limits are defined by regulatory bodies to ensure that human exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy remains within safe levels. These limits vary with frequency due to the way RF energy interacts with biological tissues. At lower frequencies (e.g., 3.5 MHz), the energy is less likely to be absorbed by the body, resulting in higher MPE limits. As the frequency increases, the energy absorption increases, leading to lower MPE limits. However, around 50 MHz, the MPE reaches its lowest point due to the resonant absorption characteristics of human tissues at this frequency. Beyond this point, as frequencies continue to increase (e.g., 440 MHz and 1296 MHz), the MPE limits start to rise again because the energy penetration depth decreases, reducing the overall absorption. Therefore, the frequency with the lowest MPE value is 50 MHz.

## 10.3.3 RF Safety Power Density and Duty Cycle

## T0C03

How does the allowable power density for RF safety change if duty cycle changes from 100 percent to 50 percent?

- 1. It increases by a factor of 3
- 2. It decreases by 50 percent
- 3. It increases by a factor of 2
- 4. There is no adjustment allowed for lower duty cycle

## Intuitive Explanation

Think of the duty cycle as how often you're using a microwave oven. If you use it all the time (100% duty cycle), you need to be careful not to overheat it. But if you only use it half the time (50% duty cycle), you can afford to crank up the power a bit more without causing harm. This is because the average power over time is lower, so the allowable power density can be higher.

## **Advanced Explanation**

The allowable power density for RF safety is determined by the average power over time. When the duty cycle decreases from 100% to 50%, the transmitter is only active half the time. This means the average power is halved, allowing the peak power density to be doubled without exceeding safety limits. This adjustment ensures that the exposure to RF energy remains within safe levels, even when the transmitter is operating at higher peak powers for shorter durations.

## 10.3.4 Factors Affecting RF Exposure Near Amateur Station Antennas

#### T0C04

What factors affect the RF exposure of people near an amateur station antenna?

- 1. Frequency and power level of the RF field
- 2. Distance from the antenna to a person
- 3. Radiation pattern of the antenna
- 4. All these choices are correct

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Imagine you're standing near a giant speaker at a concert. The closer you are, the louder it sounds, right? Now, think of the antenna as that speaker, but instead of sound, it's sending out radio waves. The volume (or intensity) of these waves depends on how powerful the antenna is, how far you are from it, and the direction it's pointing. All these factors together determine how much RF exposure you get.

## **Advanced Explanation**

RF exposure near an amateur station antenna is influenced by several key factors:

- Frequency and Power Level: Higher frequencies and power levels generally result in greater RF exposure. The power density of the RF field increases with both frequency and transmitted power.
- Distance from the Antenna: The intensity of the RF field decreases with the square of the distance from the antenna. This means that doubling the distance reduces the exposure to one-fourth of its original value.
- Radiation Pattern: The antenna's radiation pattern determines how RF energy is distributed in space. An antenna with a focused beam will have higher exposure in the direction of the beam compared to an omnidirectional antenna.

All these factors collectively determine the RF exposure levels for individuals near the antenna.

## 10.3.5 Exposure Limits and Frequency

## T0C05

Why do exposure limits vary with frequency?

- 1. Lower frequency RF fields have more energy than higher frequency fields
- 2. Lower frequency RF fields do not penetrate the human body
- 3. Higher frequency RF fields are transient in nature
- 4. The human body absorbs more RF energy at some frequencies than at others

#### **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of your body as a sponge and radio frequencies (RF) as water. Just like a sponge absorbs water differently depending on the type of water (hot, cold, salty, etc.), your body absorbs RF energy differently depending on the frequency. Some frequencies are like hot water—they get absorbed more easily, while others are like cold water—they don't get absorbed as much. That's why exposure limits vary with frequency; to protect you from the frequencies that your body absorbs more easily.

## **Advanced Explanation**

The human body's absorption of RF energy is frequency-dependent due to the interaction between electromagnetic waves and biological tissues. At certain frequencies, the body's tissues resonate, leading to higher absorption rates. This phenomenon is known as the specific absorption rate (SAR). For example, frequencies around 30 MHz to 300 MHz are particularly effective at penetrating and being absorbed by the body, which is why exposure limits are stricter in this range. The International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) and other regulatory bodies set exposure limits based on extensive research into how different frequencies interact with human tissues, ensuring safety across the RF spectrum.

## 10.3.6 Determining FCC RF Exposure Compliance

## T0C06

Which of the following is an acceptable method to determine whether your station complies with FCC RF exposure regulations?

- 1. By calculation based on FCC OET Bulletin 65
- 2. By calculation based on computer modeling
- 3. By measurement of field strength using calibrated equipment
- 4. All these choices are correct

The question asks about acceptable methods to ensure compliance with FCC RF exposure regulations. The correct answer is **D**, as all the listed methods (calculation based on FCC OET Bulletin 65, computer modeling, and measurement of field strength) are valid ways to determine compliance.

## 10.3.7 Hazard of Touching an Antenna During Transmission

## T0C07

What hazard is created by touching an antenna during a transmission?

- 1. Electrocution
- 2. RF burn to skin
- 3. Radiation poisoning
- 4. All these choices are correct

#### Intuitive Explanation

Imagine the antenna is like a hot stove. If you touch it while it's on (transmitting), you're going to get burned, but not by heat—by radio frequency (RF) energy. This is called an RF burn, and it can hurt your skin just like a regular burn.

## Advanced Explanation

When an antenna is transmitting, it radiates electromagnetic waves at radio frequencies. These waves carry energy, and when you touch the antenna, your body can absorb this energy, causing localized heating in the skin. This is known as an RF burn. Unlike electrocution, which involves electric current passing through the body, an RF burn is caused by the absorption of RF energy. Radiation poisoning, on the other hand, is related to ionizing radiation, which is not emitted by typical radio antennas. Therefore, the correct answer is an RF burn to the skin.

## 10.3.8 Reducing Exposure to RF Radiation

#### T0C08

Which of the following actions can reduce exposure to RF radiation?

- 1. Relocate antennas
- 2. Relocate the transmitter
- 3. Increase the duty cycle
- 4. All these choices are correct

To reduce exposure to RF radiation, relocating antennas is an effective measure. This helps in minimizing the direct exposure to the radiation emitted by the antennas. Relocating the transmitter may not necessarily reduce exposure, as the antennas are the primary source of radiation. Increasing the duty cycle would actually increase the exposure, as it means the transmitter is active for a longer period. Therefore, the correct answer is to relocate the antennas.

## 10.3.9 Ensuring Compliance with RF Safety Regulations

#### T0C09

How can you make sure your station stays in compliance with RF safety regulations?

- 1. By informing the FCC of any changes made in your station
- 2. By re-evaluating the station whenever an item in the transmitter or antenna system is changed
- 3. By making sure your antennas have low SWR
- 4. All these choices are correct

To ensure compliance with RF safety regulations, it is essential to re-evaluate the station whenever any changes are made to the transmitter or antenna system. This helps in maintaining the safety standards and avoiding any potential hazards.

## 10.3.10 Duty Cycle and RF Radiation Exposure

## T0C10

Why is duty cycle one of the factors used to determine safe RF radiation exposure levels?

- 1. It affects the average exposure to radiation
- 2. It affects the peak exposure to radiation
- 3. It takes into account the antenna feed line loss
- 4. It takes into account the thermal effects of the final amplifier

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of duty cycle like the amount of time you spend under the sun. If you're out in the sun for a short period, you might get a little tan, but if you're out all day, you could get a sunburn. Similarly, duty cycle measures how often a radio transmitter is actually sending out signals. If the transmitter is on a lot (high duty cycle), you're exposed to more radiation on average. If it's on less often (low duty cycle), your average exposure is lower. So, duty cycle helps us understand the average amount of radiation we're exposed to over time.

## **Advanced Explanation**

Duty cycle is defined as the ratio of the time a signal is active to the total time period. Mathematically, it is expressed as:

$$Duty\ Cycle = \frac{Active\ Time}{Total\ Time}$$

In the context of RF radiation exposure, the duty cycle is crucial because it directly influences the average power density of the radiation. The average power density  $P_{\text{avg}}$  can be calculated using the peak power density  $P_{\text{peak}}$  and the duty cycle D:

$$P_{\text{avg}} = P_{\text{peak}} \times D$$

Since the biological effects of RF radiation are often related to the average exposure rather than the peak exposure, the duty cycle becomes a significant factor in determining safe exposure levels. Regulatory bodies use duty cycle to ensure that the average exposure to RF radiation remains within safe limits, thereby protecting individuals from potential health risks.

## 10.3.11 Duty Cycle Definition for RF Exposure

## T0C11

What is the definition of duty cycle during the averaging time for RF exposure?

- 1. The difference between the lowest power output and the highest power output of a transmitter
- 2. The difference between the PEP and average power output of a transmitter
- 3. The percentage of time that a transmitter is transmitting
- 4. The percentage of time that a transmitter is not transmitting

The duty cycle during the averaging time for RF exposure refers to the proportion of time that a transmitter is actively transmitting signals. This is important for calculating the average power output and ensuring compliance with RF exposure limits. The correct answer is **C**, which accurately defines the duty cycle as the percentage of time that a transmitter is transmitting.

## 10.3.12 RF Radiation vs. Ionizing Radiation

## T0C12

How does RF radiation differ from ionizing radiation (radioactivity)?

- 1. RF radiation does not have sufficient energy to cause chemical changes in cells and damage DNA
- 2. RF radiation can only be detected with an RF dosimeter
- 3. RF radiation is limited in range to a few feet
- 4. RF radiation is perfectly safe

## **Intuitive Explanation**

Think of RF radiation like a gentle breeze and ionizing radiation like a hurricane. RF radiation is the kind of energy that powers your radio and Wi-Fi. It's pretty harmless because it doesn't have enough oomph to mess with your cells or DNA. On the other hand, ionizing radiation (like X-rays or gamma rays) is much more powerful and can cause serious damage, like a hurricane tearing through a town.

## **Advanced Explanation**

RF (Radio Frequency) radiation is a type of non-ionizing electromagnetic radiation. It operates at frequencies typically ranging from 3 kHz to 300 GHz. Non-ionizing radiation lacks the energy required to remove tightly bound electrons from atoms or molecules, which means it cannot cause ionization or directly damage DNA. In contrast, ionizing radiation (e.g., X-rays, gamma rays) has sufficient energy to ionize atoms and molecules, leading to potential chemical changes in cells and DNA damage. This fundamental difference in energy levels is why RF radiation is generally considered safe for human exposure, whereas ionizing radiation poses significant health risks.

## 10.3.13 Responsibility for RF Energy Exposure Limits

## T0C13

Who is responsible for ensuring that no person is exposed to RF energy above the FCC exposure limits?

- 1. The FCC
- 2. The station licensee
- 3. Anyone who is near an antenna
- 4. The local zoning board

The station licensee is responsible for ensuring that no person is exposed to RF energy above the FCC exposure limits. This is a regulatory requirement to ensure public safety.